

Thèse présentée pour obtenir le titre de

# Docteur de l'Université de Strasbourg

Discipline : Sciences du Vivant

Spécialité : Bioinformatique

Par

Mohamed Radhouane Aniba

# Développement d'un Système Expert basé sur les connaissances en Bioinformatique : Application à l'alignement multiple de séquences protéiques

\*\*\*

# Knowledge Based Expert System development in Bioinformatics applied to Multiple Sequence Alignment of protein sequences

Soutenue publiquement le 15 Septembre 2010 devant le jury :

Directeur de Thèse	Dr. Julie Thompson, IGBMC, Strasbourg
	Dr. Aron Marchler-Bauer, NCBI, USA
Rapporteur Externe 1	Pr. Amos Bairoch, SIB, CH
Rapporteur Externe 2	Dr. Pierre Pontarotti, Université de Provence, Marseille
Rapporteur Interne	Dr. Pierre Gancarski, LSIIT, Strasbourg
Membre invité	Dr. Olivier Poch, IGBMC, Strasbourg

Je dédie cette thèse,

# A la mémoire de mon Oncle Foued Ouali et à mon Cousin Mehdi Mzali, tous les deux partis trop tôt.

Vous étiez très chers à mon cœur, vous avez toujours cru en moi et vous aurez toujours chacun une place très particulière dans ma vie...

Que Dieu ait vos âmes

Je vous aimerais infiniment

#### Au premier amour de ma vie, ma grand-mère Aroussia

Ton éducation, tes leçons, ton amour, tes valeurs, ta patience, tous les moments de mon enfance passés à tes côtés et tout ce qui fait que je ne serais jamais là où j'en suis aujourd'hui sans toi. Je t'aime plus que tout au monde. Que dieu te garde pour nous.

### A mes très chers parents, Zineb et Hamadi, à mes très chers frères Abdou et Karim, à mon adorable belle sœur Souad et mes neveux Bibou et Foufou

Que ce travail soit le témoignage de mon amour et ma gratitude. Aucune dédicace ne saurait exprimer l'étendue de ma reconnaissance pour les sacrifices et la patience que vous m'avez consentis. Pour votre amour, votre compréhension, votre patience et le bien être moral et matériel que vous m'avez toujours assuré depuis mon enfance.

Que Dieu vous protège et que je puisse vous apporter que du bonheur, vous le méritez tellement...

#### A ma très chère épouse, Rym

Pour ta gentillesse, ta patience, tes encouragements et tous les sentiments qui nous unissent. Sans ton soutien, ce travail n'aurait pas vu le jour.

Merci d'exister pour me rendre plus heureux que je ne le suis déjà...

#### A mes complices Kaboura et Najib Ben Mena

Pour tout l'amour et l'affection que je vous porte, pour les moments agréables passés en votre compagnie chaque fois que l'on se voit et pour votre bonne humeur et humour continuels.

### A Sihem et Mohamed Ben Othman, Hend, Zied et Mahmoud Bacha, Asma et Walid Ghannouchi

Merci pour votre soutien, encouragements et votre compréhension. Vous êtes toujours là pour moi. Que Dieu vous protège et vous accorde santé, bonheur et longue vie

#### A mon complice de toujours Ahmed Chakroune

Pour ton soutien, tes idées, tes principes, tous les fous rires qu'on a eu à chaque moment partagé, ton humour et ton amitié sincère et si forte.

### **Remerciements - Ackowledgments**

I would like to thank Aron Marchler-Bauer, Amos Bairoch, Pierre Pontarotti and Pierre Gancarski for accepting to evaluate my thesis and their interest in my research work.

Merci à tous les membres du Laboratoire de Bioinformatique et Génomique Intégrative qui m'ont apporté aide et soutien pendant cette thèse. Grâce à leurs compétences et leurs qualités humaines, mon travail s'est déroulé dans une ambiance chaleureuse. Un merci tout particulier à Luc Moulinier avec qui les discussions sont toujours « stimulantes », et sa bonne humeur communicative qui rend le travail de tous les jours agréable (enfin quand je dis tous les jours ... !), ET à Yanick Noel Anno avec qui j'ai eu de très agréables moments de complicité et partagé les bons passages de nos parcours mutuels.

Je tiens particulièrement à remercier Julie Thompson, sans qui ce travail n'aurais probablement pas vu le jour et pour la chance qu'elle ma donné en m'accordant sa confiance pour être son premier thésard. En dehors de son assiduité, j'ai appris énormément à son contact.

Et bien sûr, un grand merci à Olivier Poch, pour son enthousiasme et son énergie débordante. Merci pour la confiance qu'il m'a accordée et qui m'a fait avancer scientifiquement, sans oublier ces bons moments si particuliers à chaque fois qu'il m'initiait aux incontournables références de la littérature française.

Merci aussi aux membres de la Plate-forme Bioinformatique de Strasbourg, et à Serge Uge pour son assiduité et sa persévérance contre les « trials and tribulations » de nos systèmes informatique.

# Résumé - Summary

Le travail décrit dans cette thèse porte sur le développement d'une nouvelle approche informatique favorisant l'intégration d'algorithmes complémentaires, de données biologiques ainsi que l'expertise humaine dans le but de la découverte de connaissances. En dépit des analyses bioinformatique traditionnelles qui ont largement contribué à l'extraction d'informations pertinentes, le contexte actuel, caractérisé d'une part par une variété de données tant quantitativement que qualitativement, et d'autre part par l'impossibilité d'automatiser l'expertise humaine pour les traiter, rend l'exploitation de ces données très difficile et complexe. Dans ce travail, on introduit la notion de système expert basé sur la connaissance et son application en Bioinformatique appliqué au problème des alignements multiples de séquences protéiques, à travers le développement d'une application AlexSys.

#### La société de l'information et la dynamique de la découverte de connaissance

Le 21ème siècle nous a donné accès à un large éventail de données résultant de technologies à haut débit dans des domaines tels que la génomique, transcriptomique, protéomique, interactomique, etc .. Cette large gamme de données constitue une source importante pour élucider, au niveau des systèmes, des réseaux moléculaires complexes impliqués dans des processus fondamentaux de la vie. Un facteur essentiel pour bien mener ces études réside en la faculté à organiser et valider ces données brutes, extraire les informations les plus importantes, inférer de nouvelles hypothèses et théories ainsi que présenter ces connaissances aux biologistes de manière fluide et intuitive.

Pour ce faire, nous devons clairement définir les différences qui existent entre données, informations et connaissances, qui sont trois concepts différents mais souvent employés d'une manière confuse. Les données peuvent être définies comme une liste de faits ou d'observations sans contexte ni sens. Nous devons définir le contexte ainsi que les relations qui existent entre ces données afin d'en extraire des informations utiles. Ainsi, l'information peut être définie comme étant des données organisées qui donnent un sens à travers la définition de leurs connexions. A un niveau plus évolué, la connaissance représente notre capacité à intégrer et à assimiler ces informations.

Notre aptitude à acquérir de la connaissance afin de contribuer à de nouvelles découvertes biologiques dépend de notre prédisposition à combiner et à corréler des données à des proportions et échelles différentes. A titre d'exemple, les séquences biologiques doivent être intégrées à des données structurales et informationnelles, mais également des données d'expression, des réseaux d'interactions, des données phénotypiques et cliniques, etc .. Il est donc clair que de nouvelles approches bioinformatiques sont nécessaires pour régir ces concepts dans un contexte de biologie systémique et intégrative.

#### Des données à la connaissance : l'intelligence artificielle en bioinformatique

Le chemin vers la connaissance à travers l'exploration de données, l'intégration et l'extraction d'information est un modèle commun dans de nombreux domaines, allant du monde des affaires et de la culture, vers la recherche scientifique. Récemment, des méthodes d'intelligence artificielle ont été appliquées dans ces domaines, afin de reconnaître automatiquement les modèles et d'apprendre des concepts et des règles à partir de données, en utilisant par exemple des méthodes d'inférence, d'ajustement du modèle, ou d'acquérir des connaissances à travers des exemples. Ces méthodes constituent une approche complémentaire aux méthodes informatiques classiques. Ces systèmes «intelligents» diffèrent

de la programmation classique par le fait qu'ils adaptent leur comportement en réaction aux données qu'ils reçoivent comme entrée. L'entrée peut être par exemple, des données de bases de données relationnelles (apprentissage supervisé / non supervisé), ou une série de données d'apprentissage dont les résultats sont connus (apprentissage par renforcement).

Les systèmes experts (souvent connus sous le nom de systèmes basés sur la connaissance) peuvent être construits par l'intégration d'une expertise humaine, représentée par une combinaison de connaissances théoriques dans un domaine donné et une collection de règles heuristiques de résolution de problèmes dont l'efficacité a été démontrée d'une manière expérimentale. La connaissance est alors transformée en un format que l'ordinateur peut utiliser pour résoudre des problèmes similaires. Ainsi, un système expert peut être décrit comme étant un programme informatique qui simule le jugement et le comportement des experts dans un domaine particulier et utilise leurs connaissances pour analyser et résoudre automatiquement les problèmes.

#### Développement d'un système expert pour les alignements multiples des séquences

Grâce au travail réalisé dans cette thèse, un système expert basé sur la connaissance a été élaboré et appliqué à la construction et l'analyse des alignements multiples de séquences protéiques. L'analyse des protéines représente un cas d'étude idéal pour un certain nombre de raisons dont les suivant :

• Les protéines sont des composants essentiels et incontournables en biologie moléculaire, à l'origine d'une gamme impressionnante de fonctions essentielles, comme la catalyse, le transport des nutriments, la reconnaissance et la transmission des signaux, etc Disposant d'une protéine non encore caractérisée ou annotée, l'analyse de sa séquence

d'acides aminés, par l'intermédiaire d'alignements multiples, peut révéler des informations importantes sur sa structure 3D et de son rôle fonctionnel dans la cellule.

• Les bases de données de séquences de protéines sont en croissance exponentielle et représentent désormais une source importante de données brutes. Néanmoins, un certain nombre de problèmes ont été identifiés. Les séquences ne sont pas équitablement réparties, par exemple, certains organismes modèles et des familles de protéines fonctionnellement importantes sont plus largement étudiés que d'autres. Les bases de données contiennent également un grand nombre d'artefacts, tels que les fragments de séquences ou des séquences mal prédites.

 l'analyse de séquences protéiques est l'un des domaines les plus étudiés en bioinformatique. De nombreux algorithmes d'alignement ont été développés en réponse aux défis posés par les nouvelles collections de données à grande échelle. Une comparaison de plusieurs de ces méthodes, basée sur un ensemble d'alignements de référence, a mis en exergue le fait qu'aucun algorithme, utilisé seul, n'a pas été capable de construire des alignements de qualité pour tous les cas proposés par les données.

Ainsi, l'alignement multiple des protéines est une étape essentielle, rendue complexe par la taille et la qualité des données disponibles et la grande variété d'algorithmes qui ont été développés. Toutefois, nous avons acquis, durant ces années, une expertise importante dans ce domaine qui est maintenant suffisamment mature pour le développement d'applications orientées système expert. Les objectifs de cette thèse sont de mettre au point un système expert pour tester, évaluer et optimiser toutes les étapes de la construction et l'analyse d'un alignement multiple. Ceci a été réalisé par une combinaison de différentes approches algorithmiques complémentaires et l'intégration de séquences hétérogènes, de données structurales et fonctionnelles.

#### L'architecture utilisée pour le développement du système expert : UIMA

La première étape dans la conception de notre système expert a été le choix d'une architecture de développement appropriée. Une première étude des systèmes disponibles a permis d'identifier un certain nombre de possibilités, y compris (i) les "shells" par exemple C Language Integrated Production System (CLIPS) ou le Java Expert System Shell (JESS), (ii) la construction d'un système expert personnalisé en utilisant C ou Prolog. Nous avons choisi UIMA (Unstructured Information Management Architecture), initialement développé par IBM, qui fournit un système approprié pour la gestion dynamique de l'information par l'intégration d'outils d'analyse spécifiques. Les outils à utiliser dans une situation donnée sont choisis par des modules spéciaux qui décident du choix des algorithmes les plus appropriés à utiliser selon le type d'informations traitées (processus dirigé par les données et non par les algorithmes).

En utilisant cette architecture, un prototype de système expert a été conçu avec une organisation à trois couches: (i) la collecte de données (ii) l'annotation de données et l'extraction de l'information et (iii) la construction de l'alignement. Le prototype a fourni une preuve de concept pour démontrer la pertinence de l'utilisation de UIMA pour la construction de systèmes experts.

#### Construction de la base de connaissance

Une étape capitale dans tout système expert consiste en la construction de la base de connaissances. Dans le cas d'AlexSys, nous avons exploité l'expertise acquise au sein de notre groupe, concernant l'évaluation et la comparaison des algorithmes d'alignement. La base de connaissances est donc élaborée en utilisant des ensembles de séquences qui ont servi à la construction d'alignements de référence (BaliBase, OxBench) qui ont été construits par des

programmes d'alignement multiple et corrigés manuellement par des experts du domaine. En outre, un nouvel ensemble de 230 alignements de référence a été ajouté qui introduit plus de cas de figures difficile, ce qui représente des problèmes typiques rencontrés lors de l'alignement de séquences à grande échelle. Une fonction objective a été définie pour mesurer la qualité des alignements générés par rapport aux alignements de référence, et pour déterminer les ensembles de données servant à l'algorithme d'apprentissage décrit ci-dessous.

En ce basant sur des connaissances antérieures, un certain nombre d'attributs a été identifié qui caractérise les séquences utilisées pour l'apprentissage au sein d'AlexSys, comme à titre d'exemple le nombre des séquences dans un ensemble, la longueur des séquences, le nombre de structures / domaines fonctionnels, l'hydrophobicité, etc

#### L'apprentissage automatique

Un de nos principaux objectifs lors du développement d'AlexSys était d'améliorer l'efficacité de la construction d'alignement multiple, en sélectionnant les programmes les plus appropriés à utiliser le plus tôt possible dans le processus d'alignement. Pour ce faire, un «moteur d'inférence intelligente» a été construit pour prédire *a priori* les performances de 6 programmes différents. Les programmes ont été sélectionnés connaissant leur capacité à bien aligner des séquences et du fait de la complémentarité de leurs algorithmes. Les règles utilisées dans le moteur d'inférence ont été élaborées en utilisant 348 cas de test d'alignement dans la base de connaissances. Basée uniquement sur les attributs prédéfinis de l'ensemble des séquences à aligner, nous identifions les programmes d'alignement les plus appropriés et qui sont les plus susceptible de produire un alignement de qualité, en utilisant un algorithme d'apprentissage automatique. La performance de certains algorithmes d'apprentissage automatique a été évaluée dans une série d'expériences, aboutissant à la définition d'un

problème de classification binaire et le choix d'un arbre de décision comme méthode finale à implémenter dans AlexSys

#### Evaluation du système expert

La précision de prédiction du moteur d'inférence implémenté dans AlexSys a été évaluée dans un essai à grande échelle, en utilisant des alignements multiples construits dans le cadre d'une nouvelle version du benchmark BaliBase. Deux approches différentes ont été testées, une fondée sur des probabilités et une fondée sur des règles, pour identifier les algorithmes d'alignement les plus appropriés à utiliser pour chaque ensemble de séquences. Le moteur d'inférence basé sur la probabilité a donné lieu à une plus grande précision que le système fondé sur des règles. La différence au niveau de la qualité de l'alignement entre ces deux méthodes peut être expliquée par les connaissances de base construite dans les règles, ce qui favorise en premier lieu les programmes d'alignement plus rapides au dépend des programmes d'alignement plus précis.

L'efficacité et la précision du processus de construction d'alignement multiple ont ensuite été évaluées en utilisant les alignements de référence en comparaisons avec les programmes d'alignements utilisés seuls pour traiter les séquences. En termes de précision d'alignement, les deux méthodes mises en œuvre dans AlexSys (probabilité et règles) permettent d'aboutir à des alignements ayant des scores significativement plus élevés que la plupart des programmes existants. Un seul programme donne lieu à des scores d'alignements significativement plus élevés que AlexSys, mais qui nécessité près de 3 fois plus de temps par rapport à AlexSys. Nos résultats sont donc très prometteurs et le système peut être utilisé pour construire des alignements multiples de qualité supérieure en un temps «acceptable» pour les projets à haut débit apportant ainsi un réel compromis entre qualité et rapidité d'exécution.

#### Conclusions et perspectives

L'objectif de ce projet de thèse a été le développement d'un système expert afin de tester, évaluer et d'optimiser toutes les étapes de la construction et l'analyse d'un alignement multiple de séquences. Le nouveau système a été validé en utilisant des alignements de référence et apporte une nouvelle vision pour le développement de logiciels en bioinformatique: les systèmes experts basés sur la connaissance.

L'architecture utilisée pour construire le système expert est très modulaire et flexible, permettant à AlexSys d'évoluer en même temps que de nouveaux algorithmes seront mis à disposition. Ultérieurement, AlexSys sera utilisé pour optimiser davantage chaque étape du processus d'alignement, par exemple en optimisant les paramètres des différents programmes d'alignement. Le moteur d'inférence pourrait également être étendu à identification des combinaisons d'algorithmes qui pourraient fournir des informations complémentaires sur les séquences. Par exemple, les régions bien alignées par différents algorithmes pourraient être identifiées et regroupées en un alignement consensus unique. Des informations structurales et fonctionnelles supplémentaires peuvent également être utilisées pour améliorer la précision de l'alignement final. Enfin, un aspect crucial de tout outil bioinformatique consiste en son accessibilité et la convivialité d'utilisation. Par conséquent, nous sommes en train de développer un serveur web, et un service web, nous allons également concevoir un nouveau module de visualisation qui fournira une interface intuitive et conviviale pour toutes les informations récupérées et construites par AlexSys.

## **Summary**

The work described in this thesis concerns the development of a new vision of software in bioinformatics, emphasizing the exploitation of complementary computer algorithms, biological data and human expertise, for the purposes of knowledge discovery. Although traditional bioinformatics analyses have provided the basis for the extraction of much useful information, today's data-rich context means that the knowledge discovery process is complicated on the one hand, by the huge amount of heterogeneous data available, and on the other hand, by the next-to-impossible automation of the human expertise required. Here, we describe the development of a new knowledge-based expert system, AlexSys, for complex bioinformatics analyses and its subsequent application to a crucial task: Multiple Sequence Alignment.

#### Information revolution and the dynamics of knowledge discovery

The 21<sup>st</sup> century has given us access to vast amounts of data resulting from high throughput technologies in fields such as genomics, transcriptomics, proteomics, interactomics, etc. This wealth of data provides an important resource for system-level studies of the complex molecular networks implicated in the fundamental processes of life. Nevertheless, the success of such studies will depend on our ability to organize and validate the raw data, to extract previously unknown information, to infer new hypotheses and to present the results in a user-friendly way to the biologist.

In this context, the concepts of data, information and knowledge need to be clearly distinguished. Data can be defined as a list of simple facts or observations without any context or meaning. The context and the associations or relations between data are needed before the data can be transformed into useful information. Thus, information can be considered as being organized data that has been given meaning by way of the relationships between pieces of data. For example, single entries in a database are data, whereas reports created from intelligent database queries result in information. At a higher level, knowledge refers to the facts and ideas that the human mind has learned. Thus acquiring knowledge can be defined as assimilating information.

Our capability to acquire knowledge and make novel biological discoveries will depend on our ability to combine and correlate diverse data sets of multiple proportions and scales.

For example, sequence data must be integrated with structure and function data, but also gene expression data, pathways data, phenotypic and clinical data, and so on. Novel bioinformatics approaches are clearly needed to handle these issues in integrative systems biology.

#### From data to knowledge: computational intelligence in bioinformatics

The road to knowledge through data exploration, integration and information extraction is a common pattern in many areas from business and culture, to scientific research. Recently, artificial intelligence methods have been applied in these fields, in order to automatically recognize patterns and learn concept and rules from the data, using for example inference methods, model fitting, or gaining knowledge through examples. Such methods constitute a practical complementary approach to traditional computational analyses. These "intelligent" systems differ from simple programmed ones by the fact that they adopt their behavior in response to the input they get from the outer world. The input can be for example, data in relational databases (supervised/unsupervised learning), or a training set of examples with known outputs (reinforcement learning).

Computer-based expert systems (also known as knowledge-based systems) can be constructed by obtaining human expert knowledge, represented by a combination of a theoretical understanding in a given domain and a collection of heuristic problem-solving rules that experience has shown to be effective. The knowledge is then transformed into a form that a computer may use to solve similar problems. Thus, an expert system can be described as a computer program that simulates the judgment and behavior of experts in a particular field and uses their knowledge to provide automatic problem analysis to users of the software.

#### Development of an expert system approach for multiple sequence alignment

During this thesis, a new knowledge-based expert system has been developed and applied to the construction and analysis of multiple alignments of protein sequences. Protein sequence analysis represents an ideal case study for a number of reasons:

• Proteins are the molecular workhorses of biology, responsible for carrying out a tremendous range of essential functions, such as catalysis, transportation of nutrients, recognition and transmission of signals, etc. Given an uncharacterized protein, the analysis of its amino acid sequence, via multiple alignment, can reveal important information about its 3D structure and its functional role in the cell.

<sup>15</sup> 

• The protein sequence databases are growing exponentially and now represent an important source of raw data. However, a number of problems have been identified. The sequences are not equally distributed, e.g. some model organisms and functionally important protein families are more widely studied. The databases also contain a large number of artifacts, such as sequence fragments or badly predicted sequences.

• Protein sequence analysis is one of the most widely studied fields in bioinformatics. Numerous different alignment algorithms have been developed in response to the challenges posed by the new large scale datasets. A comparison of many of these methods, based on a widely used alignment benchmark dataset, highlighted the fact that no single algorithm was capable of constructing high quality alignments for all test cases.

Thus, protein multiple alignment is an essential task that is complicated by the size and the quality of the available data and the wide variety of computational methods that have been developed. Nevertheless, we have gained a significant amount of human expertise and the field is now mature enough for expert system applications. The specific objectives of this thesis were to develop an expert system to test, evaluate and optimise all the steps involved in the construction and analysis of a multiple alignment. This has been achieved by a combination of different, complementary methods and the integration of heterogeneous sequence, structural and functional data.

#### Choice of development architecture: UIMA

The first step in the design of our expert system was the choice of a suitable development architecture. An initial study of available systems identified a number of possibilities including (i) existing 'shells' e.g. the C Language Integrated Production System (CLIPS) or the Java Expert System Shell (JESS), (ii) the construction of a customized expert system using C or Prolog. We chose the UIMA (Unstructured Information Management Architecture), originally developed by IBM, which provides a suitable framework to manage information dynamically by the integration of dedicated analysis tools. The tools to be used in any particular situation are chosen by special modules that reason about the most suitable algorithms to use depending on the information type and features.

Using this architecture, a prototype expert system was designed with a three layer organization: (i) data collection (ii) data annotation and information extraction and (iii)

alignment construction and analysis. The prototype provided a proof-of-concept test case for the suitability of UIMA for building expert systems.

#### Construction of the knowledge base

An important factor in any expert system is the construction of the knowledge base. In the case of AlexSys, we exploited the expertise gained in the group, concerning the evaluation and comparison of alignment algorithms. The knowledge base thus consists of sets of sequences from standard benchmarks (BAliBASE, OxBench) and the corresponding multiple alignments built either by automatic alignment programs or human experts. In addition, a new set of 230 benchmark alignments was constructed that contained more difficult test cases, representing typical problems encountered when aligning large-scale data sets. An objective function was defined to measure the quality of the automatic alignments compared to the benchmarks, and to determine positive and negative training sets for the learning algorithm described below.

Again based on previous knowledge, a number of attributes were identified that characterize the benchmark sequence sets used for training AlexSys, including the number and length of the sequences, the number of structural/functional domains, the hydrophobicity, etc.

#### Machine learning

One of our main objectives in developing AlexSys was to improve the efficiency of the multiple alignment construction, by selecting the most suitable programs to use as early as possible in the alignment process. To achieve this, an 'intelligent' inference engine was built to predict *a priori* the performance of 6 different programs. The programs were selected because they are known to perform well and because they represent different complementary algorithms. The rules used in the inference engine were trained on 348 alignment test cases in the knowledge base. Based only on the predefined attributes of the set of sequences to be aligned, we identify the most suitable aligner that is most likely to produce a high quality alignment, using a machine learning algorithm. The performance of various machine learning algorithms was assessed in a series of experiments, resulting in the definition of a binary classification problem and the selection of a random forest decision tree learning algorithm.

#### Evaluation of the expert system

The prediction accuracy of the inference engine in AlexSys was evaluated in a largescale test, using multiple alignments built in the context of a new version of BaliBase benchmark. Two alternative approaches were tested, based on probability- and rule-based methods, for identifying the most suitable aligner to use for each alignment set. The probability-based inference engine resulted in higher accuracy than the rule-based system. The difference in alignment accuracy could be explained by the background knowledge built into the rules, which favors a shorter running time when more than one aligner is predicted to give a strong performance.

The efficiency and accuracy of the multiple alignment construction process were then evaluated using the standard benchmarks and compared to some of the most widely used alignment programs. In terms of alignment accuracy, both methods implemented in AlexSys (probability- and rule-based) achieved significantly higher scores than most of the existing programs. Only one program scored significantly higher than AlexSys, but required almost 3 times as much CPU time compared to AlexSys. Our results are thus very promising and the system can be used to construct high quality multiple alignment in an "acceptable time" for high throughput projects.

#### **Conclusions and Perspectives**

The objective of this PhD project was the development of an integrated expert system to test, evaluate and optimize all the stages of the construction and the analysis of a multiple sequence alignment. The new system was validated using standard benchmark cases and brings a new vision to software development in Bioinformatics: knowledge-guided systems.

The architecture used to build the expert system is highly modular and flexible, allowing AlexSys to evolve as new algorithms are made available. In the future, AlexSys will be used to further optimize each stage of the alignment process, for example by optimizing the input parameters of the different algorithms. The inference engine could also be extended to identify combinations of algorithms that could potentially provide complementary information about the input sequences. For example, well aligned regions from different aligners could be identified and combined into a single consensus alignment. Additional structural and functional information could also be exploited to improve the final alignment accuracy. Finally, a crucial aspect of any bioinformatics tool is its accessibility and usability.

Therefore, we are currently developing a web server, and a web services based distributed system. We will also design a novel visualization module that will provide an intuitive, user-friendly interface to all the information retrieved and constructed by AlexSys.

RÉSUMÉ - SUMMARY	6			
LIST OF FIGURES				
LIST OF TABLES				
INTRODUCTION	28			
CHAPTER 1	29			
1. INFOSPHERE, INFOGLUT AND KNOWLEDGE DISCOVERY:	29			
WHEN THE INFORMATION AGE MEETS THE POSTGENOMIC ERA	29			
1.1. The Infosphere and the information age	30			
1.1.1. Introduction	30			
1.1.2. Information Systems	31			
1.1.3. The information revolution	33			
1.1.4. The road to Knowledge is paved with Data that generates Information	34			
1.1.5. Knowledge Discovery via Artificial Intelligence	36			
1.2. THE BIOLOGICAL INFOSPHERE: THE GENOMIC REVOLUTION	37			
1.2.1. Bioinformatics in the pre-genomic era	37			
1.2.2. Genome sequencing projects and biological data growth	44			
1.2.2. Bioinformatics in the post-genomic era	46			
1.3 CONCLUSION	51			
CHAPTER 2	52			
2. BIOLOGICAL DATABASES:	52			
DATA STORAGE AND WAREHOUSING IS GREAT, DATA QUALITY IS BETTER	52			
2.1 DATA COLLECTION	54			
2.1.1. Data warehouses	54			
2.1.2. Distributed databases	55			
2.2. DATA INTEGRATION AND VALIDATION	56			
2.3. DATA EXTRACTION AND QUERYING: THE MORE WE FORMALIZE, THE BETTER WE LEARN!	58			
CHAPTER 3				
3. FROM DATA INTEGRATION TO KNOWLEDGE DISCOVERY	60			
THE ROLE OF COMPUTATIONAL INTELLIGENCE IN BIOINFORMATICS				

3.1.	DATA MINING IN BIOINFORMATICS	60
3.1	1.1. Classification	62
3.1	1.2. Clustering	62
3.1	1.3. Association rules	62
3.1	1.4. Sequential patterns	63
3.2.	TEXT MINING IN BIOINFORMATICS: FOCUS ON LITERATURE	63
3.2	2.1 Functional annotation	64
3.2	2.2 Cellular localization	64
3.2	2.3 DNA-expression arrays	64
3.2	2.4 Protein interactions	65
3.2	2.5 Molecular medicine	65
3.3.	The role of Machine Learning in modern bioinformatics	66
3.1	1.1. Supervised learning	66
3.1	1.2. Unsupervised learning	67
СНАРТЕ	ER 4	69
4. KNC	OWLEDGE BASED EXPERT SYSTEMS IN BIOINFORMATICS	69
4.1.	EXPERT SYSTEMS FOR SYSTEMS-LEVEL BIOLOGY	69
4.1. 4.2.	EXPERT SYSTEMS FOR SYSTEMS-LEVEL BIOLOGY	69 71
4.1. 4.2. <i>4.</i> 2	EXPERT SYSTEMS FOR SYSTEMS-LEVEL BIOLOGY EXPERT SYSTEMS: REAL-WORLD APPLICATIONS 2.1 Medical diagnostics	69 71 71
4.1. 4.2. 4.2 4.2	EXPERT SYSTEMS FOR SYSTEMS-LEVEL BIOLOGY EXPERT SYSTEMS: REAL-WORLD APPLICATIONS 2.1 Medical diagnostics 2.2. DNA sequence analysis: Forensic science	69 71 71 72
4.1. 4.2. 4.2 4.2 4.2	EXPERT SYSTEMS FOR SYSTEMS-LEVEL BIOLOGY EXPERT SYSTEMS: REAL-WORLD APPLICATIONS 2.1 Medical diagnostics 2.2. DNA sequence analysis: Forensic science 2.3. Protein sequence analysis	69 71 71 72 73
4.1. 4.2. 4.2 4.2 4.2 4.2	EXPERT SYSTEMS FOR SYSTEMS-LEVEL BIOLOGY EXPERT SYSTEMS: REAL-WORLD APPLICATIONS 2.1 Medical diagnostics 2.2. DNA sequence analysis: Forensic science 2.3. Protein sequence analysis 2.4. Genome annotation	69 71 71 72 73 76
4.1. 4.2. 4.2 4.2 4.2 4.2 4.2	EXPERT SYSTEMS FOR SYSTEMS-LEVEL BIOLOGY	69 71 71 72 73 76 77
4.1. 4.2. 4.2 4.2 4.2 4.2 4.3. CHAPTE	EXPERT SYSTEMS FOR SYSTEMS-LEVEL BIOLOGY	69 71 71 72 73 76 77 <b>80</b>
4.1. 4.2. 4.2 4.2 4.2 4.3. CHAPTE 5. MU	EXPERT SYSTEMS FOR SYSTEMS-LEVEL BIOLOGY	69 71 71 72 73 73 76 77 80 VIS IN
4.1. 4.2. 4.2 4.2 4.2 4.3. CHAPTE 5. MU BIOINFORMAT	EXPERT SYSTEMS FOR SYSTEMS-LEVEL BIOLOGY EXPERT SYSTEMS: REAL-WORLD APPLICATIONS 2.1 Medical diagnostics 2.2. DNA sequence analysis: Forensic science 2.3. Protein sequence analysis 2.4. Genome annotation EXPERT SYSTEM DESIGN: FOCUS ON KNOWLEDGE-BASED SYSTEMS EXPERT SYSTEM DESIGN: FOCUS ON KNOWLEDGE-BASED SYSTEMS ER 5 JULTIPLE ALIGNMENT OF PROTEIN SEQUENCES: A CASE STUDY FOR EXPERT SYSTEM TICS	69 71 72 73 73 76 77 80 VIS IN 80
4.1. 4.2. 4.2 4.2 4.2 4.3. CHAPTE 5. MU BIOINFORMAT 5.1.	EXPERT SYSTEMS FOR SYSTEMS-LEVEL BIOLOGY	69 71 72 73 73 77 80 VIS IN 80
4.1. 4.2. 4.2 4.2 4.2 4.3. CHAPTE 5. MU BIOINFORMAT 5.1. 5.2.	EXPERT SYSTEMS FOR SYSTEMS-LEVEL BIOLOGY	69 71 72 73 73 73 73 73 80 80 81
4.1. 4.2. 4.2 4.2 4.2 4.3. CHAPTE 5. MU BIOINFORMAT 5.1. 5.2. 5.2	EXPERT SYSTEMS FOR SYSTEMS-LEVEL BIOLOGY	69 71 72 72 73 76 77 80 80 81 81
4.1. 4.2. 4.2 4.2 4.2 4.3. CHAPTE 5. MU BIOINFORMAT 5.1. 5.2. 5.2 5.2 5.2	EXPERT SYSTEMS FOR SYSTEMS-LEVEL BIOLOGY	69 71 72 73 73 73 77 80 80 81 81 83

5.3. N	Aultiple sequence alignment
5.4. N	AULTIPLE ALIGNMENT APPLICATIONS
5.4.1.	Phylogenetic studies
5.4.2.	Comparative genomics
5.4.3.	Gene prediction and validation89
5.4.4.	Protein function characterization91
5.4.5.	Protein 2D/3D structure prediction93
5.4.6.	RNA structure and function94
5.4.7.	Interaction networks
5.4.8.	Genetics
5.4.9.	Drug discovery, design
CHAPTER 6	5
6 MUUT	
0. WOLT	
6.1. N	Aultiple alignment construction
6.1.1	Progressive multiple alignment
6.1.2	Iterative strategies
6.1.3	Co-operative strategies
6.2. A	LIGNMENT PARAMETERS
6.2.1	Scoring matrices
6.2.2	Gap schemes
6.2.3	Alignment statistics
6.3. N	JULTIPLE ALIGNMENT QUALITY
6.3.1.	Multiple alignment objective scoring functions
6.3.2.	Determination of reliable regions109
6.3.2.	Benchmarking
6.3.3.	Comparison of multiple alignment programs114
MATERIAL	S AND METHODS
CHAPTER 7	
7.1 C	OMPUTING RESOURCES
7.1.1	Servers
7.1.2	Databases

7.1	L.3 C	DATA RETRIEVAL	119	
7.2	<u>2</u> N	MSA programs		
7.3	3 C	THER BIOINFORMATICS PROGRAMS AND UTILITIES	122	
	7.3.1	MACSIMS	122	
	7.3.2	Biojava	123	
7.4	1 A	LIGNMENT BENCHMARKS	123	
	7.4.1	BAliBASE	123	
	7.4.2	OXBench	124	
7.5	5 V	VEKA MACHINE LEARNING PACKAGE	124	
7.6	5 L	JIMA: UNSTRUCTURED INFORMATION MANAGEMENT ARCHITECTURE	125	
	7.6.1	The Architecture, the Framework and the SDK	125	
	7.6.2	Analysis Engines, Annotators and Results	127	
	7.6.3	Representing Analysis Results in the CAS	127	
	7.6.4	Component Descriptors	128	
	7.6.5	Aggregate Analysis Engines	128	
	7.6.6	Application building and Collection Processing	129	
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
RESU	LTS A	ND DISCUSSION	130	
<b>RESU</b> Pri	<b>LTS A</b> EAMBL	E: ALEXSYS DESIGN, IMPLEMENTATION AND EVALUATION	<b> 130</b> 131	
RESU PRI	EAMBL	ND DISCUSSION E: ALEXSYS DESIGN, IMPLEMENTATION AND EVALUATION	<b>130</b> 131 <b>133</b>	
RESU PRI CHAP	LTS A EAMBL PTER 8 CRE/	ND DISCUSSION	<b>130</b> 131 <b>133</b> 133	
<b>RESU</b> PRI <b>CHAP</b> 8. 8.1	LTS A EAMBL PTER 8 CRE/ L N	ND DISCUSSION E: AlexSys Design, Implementation and Evaluation B Ation of the AlexSys knowledge base	130 131 133 133 133	
RESU PRI CHAP 8. 8.1	EAMBL PTER 8 CREA L N 8.1.1	ND DISCUSSION E: ALEXSYS DESIGN, IMPLEMENTATION AND EVALUATION ATION OF THE ALEXSYS KNOWLEDGE BASE	<b>130</b> 131 <b>133</b> 133 133	
RESU PRI CHAF 8. 8.1	LTS A EAMBL PTER 8 CRE/ L N 8.1.1 8.1.2	ND DISCUSSION	130 131 133 133 133 134	
RESU PRI CHAP 8. 8.1	LTS A EAMBL PTER 8 CRE/ L N 8.1.1 8.1.2 8.1.3	ND DISCUSSION	130 131 133 133 133 133 134 135	
RESU PR CHAP 8. 8.1	LTS A EAMBL PTER 8 CRE/ L N 8.1.1 8.1.2 8.1.3 2 A	ND DISCUSSION E: ALEXSYS DESIGN, IMPLEMENTATION AND EVALUATION ATION OF THE ALEXSYS KNOWLEDGE BASE AATION OF THE ALEXSYS KNOWLEDGE BASE MACHINE LEARNING INPUT What is a concept (Class)? What is an example (Instance)? What is an attribute?	<b>130</b> 131 133 133 133 133 134 135 136	
RESU PRI CHAP 8. 8.1 8.2 8.2 8.2	LTS A EAMBL PTER 8 CRE/ L N 8.1.1 8.1.2 8.1.3 2 A 3 A	ND DISCUSSION E: ALEXSYS DESIGN, IMPLEMENTATION AND EVALUATION ATION OF THE ALEXSYS KNOWLEDGE BASE AACHINE LEARNING INPUT What is a concept (Class)? What is an example (Instance)? What is an attribute? NexSys INSTANCE SELECTION	130 131 133 133 133 133 134 135 136 137	
RESU PRI CHAP 8. 8.1 8.2 8.2 8.3 8.2	LTS A EAMBL PTER 8 CRE/ L N 8.1.1 8.1.2 8.1.3 2 A 3 A 3 A	ND DISCUSSION	130 131 133 133 133 133 134 135 136 137 141	
RESU PRI CHAP 8. 8.1 8.2 8.2 8.2 8.2 CHAP	LTS A EAMBL PTER 8 CRE/ L N 8.1.1 8.1.2 8.1.3 2 A 3 A 1 A 2 A 3 A 1 A 2 A 3	ND DISCUSSION	130 131 133 133 133 133 134 135 136 137 141 143	
RESU PRI CHAP 8. 8.1 8.2 8.2 8.2 8.2 8.2 CHAP 9.	LTS A EAMBL PTER 8 CRE/ L N 8.1.1 8.1.2 8.1.3 2 A 8.1.3 2 A 1 A 2 A 1 A 2 A 1 A 2 A 3 A 1 A 2 A 3 A 1 A 2 A 3 A 1 A 2 A 3 A 3 A 3 A 3 A 3 A 3 A 3 A 3 A 4 A 4 A 4 A 4 A 5	ND DISCUSSION E: ALEXSYS DESIGN, IMPLEMENTATION AND EVALUATION	130 131 133 133 133 133 134 135 136 137 141 143	
RESU PRI CHAP 8. 8.1 8.2 8.3 8.2 8.3 8.4 CHAP 9.	LTS A EAMBL PTER 8 CRE/ L N 8.1.1 8.1.2 8.1.3 2 A 8.1.3 2 A 8.1.3 2 A 1 A 9 TER 9 MAG 9.1	ND DISCUSSION E: ALEXSYS DESIGN, IMPLEMENTATION AND EVALUATION	130 131 133 133 133 133 133 134 135 136 137 141 143 143	

9.2.1 AlexSys decision tree algorithm	149
9.3 MODEL AND MACHINE LEARNING EVALUATION	150
9.3.1 AlexSys Performance and Evaluation	151
9.4 Model creation and access through Java API	153
CHAPTER 10	155
10. EXPERT SYSTEM CONSTRUCTION	155
10.1 Expert system architecture	155
10.2 UIMA MODULE CREATION	156
10.2.1 AlexSys Type System	156
10.2.2 AlexSys Analysis Engine Descriptor	157
10.2.3 AlexSys Analysis Engine Annotator	158
10.3 Metadata layer	159
10.4 ALEXSYS COMPUTATIONAL CORE	159
10.4.1 Input data handling (IDH)	159
10.4.2 Annotation and Information Extraction (AIE)	160
10.4.3 Multiple Alignment Construction (MAC)	160
10.5 ALEXSYS INSTALLATION AND USAGE	163
11. ALEXSYS EVALUATION	
11.1 CONSTRUCTING NEW TRAINING AND TEST SETS	165
11.2 EVALUATION OF MSA QUALITY AND EFFICIENCY	169
CONCLUSION AND PERSPECTIVES	
FRAMEWORK CHOICE FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE KNOWLEDGE BASED SYSTEM	
TAKING INTO ACCOUNT THE ALIGNMENT CONTEXT: KNOWLEDGE ENHANCEMENT	
ALIGNMENT ALGORITHM INTEGRATION	176
Multiple Alignment Program parameters	177
ALEXSYS ADDITIONAL FEATURES	178
ALEXSYS IN THE CLOUDS	179
REFERENCES	
APPENDIX	210

# List of Figures

Figure 1 : Data, Information and Knowledge

Figure 2 : Conceptual hierarchy of data, information and knowledge

Figure 3 : Protein function annotation typical workflow

Figure 4 : Human genome project timeline

Figure 5 : The Omix matrix and Integromics

Figure 6 : Some of the most well known Machine learning algorithms applied in Bioinformatics

Figure 7 : Typical expert system architecture, components and human interface

Figure 8 : Different levels of protein structure

Figure 9 : Example alignment of a set of 7 hemoglobin domain sequences

Figure 10 : Alternative hypotheses for the rooting of the tree of life

Figure 11 : UCSC Genome browser display

Figure 12 : vALId display of a multiple alignment of plant alcohol dehydrogenases

Figure 13: Multiple alignment of the BBS10 protein and homologs found in in-depth database searches

Figure 14 : Multiple sequence alignment of NR ligand binding domains and classspecific features

Figure 15: S2S display of a multiple alignment of the RNA element conserved in the SARS virus genome

Figure 16: The basic progressive alignment procedure

Figure 17 : Overview of different progressive alignment algorithms

Figure 18 : PAM 250 Matrix

Figure 19 : Schematic view of the MACSIMS alignment annotation system.

Figure 20 : UIMA Component Architecture

Figure 21 : Input data examples for machine learning algorithms

Figure 22 : Example ARFF files.

Figure 23 : Input data representation in Weka.

Figure 24 : Tree construction for the weather data

Figure 25 : Expanded tree stumps for the weather data

Figure 26 : Final Decision tree

Figure 27 : Evaluation of the Random Forest algorithm for the classification of aligner

#### performance

Figure 28 : Simple Java code showing how to implement a classifier

Figure 29 : Interaction between UIMA and public available APIs

Figure 30 : An example of a Type System (TS) in AlexSys

Figure 31 : Analysis Engine Descriptor Editor

Figure 32 : Flat and Layered representation of AlexSys

Figure 33 : General statistics computed for the benchmark alignments

Figure 34 : Reference alignment of representative sequences of the p53/p63/p73 family

Figure 35 : Overall alignment performance for each of the MSA programs tested.

Figure 36 : Evaluation of alignment accuracy and efficiency for AlexSys and the six existing aligners.

Figure 37 : Back-To-Back comparison of AlexSys and other MSA programs

Figure 38 : AlexSys future infrastructure enhancement

# List of Tables

Table 1: Some examples of '-omics' data resources

Table 2: Current state of the art for multiple sequence alignment methods

Table 3: Number of test cases in version 3 of the BAliBASE alignment benchmark

Table 4: Attributes used to describe the input data in AlexSys

Table 5: Correctly and incorrectly classified instances for each aligner

# Introduction

# Chapter 1

# 1. Infosphere, Infoglut and Knowledge Discovery:

### When the Information Age meets the Postgenomic Era

Among the jungle of terms experts use to qualify the world we live in, like the atomic age, the postindustrial era, the space age, to cite a few, the "information age" has become a standard expression. Today, we are all surrounded by gadgets, tools and devices that allow us to be informed and stay connected to anyone, anywhere and anytime. Accessing media of all kinds has become a human reflex that some scientists qualify as dangerous [1], because we are not in control and it is the new technologies that shape our lives. To quote some examples, hundreds to thousands of television channels are transmitting both correct and incorrect information, social networks and information superhighways are linking people around the world and bringing down geographical frontiers (Facebook, Myspace, Twitter and thousands of others), and more recently, virtual reality is bringing sight, sound, and other senses to the electronic experience.

Today, software companies and suppliers have dethroned computer makers, while audio and video equipment industries are turning into entertainment companies. We are living in a world where hundreds of products come from the information sector instead of manufacturing since we work with computers and we entertain ourselves with electronic devices.

Human beings are thus surrounded with various forms of information sources, from books, magazines, newspapers to CDs, DVDs, websites, docuramas, databases, etc. to the point where, in the wealthier countries, new topics of discussion are arising, for example the future of newspapers in the internet age. While the format with which the information is

provided is certainly an interesting subject, it might be more important to consider what to do with all the information: do we really need this amount of data, how we can manage it, how to transform it, how to benefit from it, who is actually undergoing these data and who is profiting from it, what does it bring to humanity and how? All these questions are now occupying more and more scientists, from philosophers, to linguists, to biologists ... One recurring theme is the need to conceptualize and to distinguish between data, information and knowledge.

In this chapter we will introduce and relate two distinct, but at the same time, analogous historical changes. First, we will describe the infosphere in which we live, introducing the information age, and how it impacts our everyday life (section 1.1). We will try then to map these concepts in the biological field, where the postgenomic era constitutes a good "case study" for the information revolution. Indeed, the emergence of omics science, based on high throughput technologies, has led to a torrent of new data, and new challenges in terms of data integration and analysis (section 1.2).

### **1.1.** The Infosphere and the information age

#### 1.1.1. Introduction

The data that now flows around the world does not generally come in raw format but is encrypted and the information it contains is often hidden and needs decryption. In this lock and keys information context, even if the data is made public and thus freely available, only those that hold the keys can benefit from the knowledge underneath the information stack.

Data, information and knowledge are different concepts that need to be understood, so that we can correctly place ourselves in this informational hierarchy. The terms that define these concepts are often misused: data, information and knowledge are often employed to talk about the same thing, despite the fact that they are distinct. When acquiring a data message, if we do not have enough contextual background to decrypt it, we may not be "informationally" armed to react in a suitable manner. The French poet Eugène Emile Paul Grindel known as Paul Eluard, in his famous diction "La Terre est bleue comme une orange" which means literally "The earth is blue like an orange" was neither blind nor ignorant about the color of an orange or the earth's size. Understanding the sentence is not directly related to its simple decryption, prior knowledge is needed, and the message, as a result can then generate

information that will change that knowledge. It is therefore important to distinguish between the concepts of data, information and knowledge (Figure 1).



Figure 1 : Data, Information and Knowledge. Data generates information (that could be considered as additional data), information generates knowledge (that could be either generated information or generated data).

Data can be defined as a list of simple facts or observations without any context or meaning. The context and the associations or relations between data are needed before the data can be transformed into useful information. Thus, information can be considered as being organized data that has been given meaning by way of the relationships between pieces of data. For example, single entries in a database are data, whereas reports created from intelligent database queries result in information. Scientists in general and mathematicians in particular have defined information as a reduction of uncertainty in a communication system [2]. Thus, any element or matter in nature contains information. Despite the fact that information and knowledge are different, they do overlap. Knowledge refers to facts and ideas that the human mind has learned, thus acquiring knowledge is defined as absorbing information. This information absorption is different depending on the context, sometimes it is done spontaneously (learning a foreign language for example) and sometimes it is a slow and difficult process that requires in-depth studies.

#### 1.1.2. Information Systems

Despite the fact that the amount of knowledge a human being can acquire is huge, it is not infinite, and the mind by itself cannot reliably manage everything. Although memory works well in many situations, our society is becoming increasingly complex. As a result, a

single person's memory is now too unreliable, since the known facts are generally too random to satisfy the requirements of many situations. Easy and rapid access to external information is thus playing an increasingly important role in society and knowing the answer is strongly related to our ability to acquire the pertinent information.

As a consequence, the discipline of Information Systems (IS) has developed recently to study the methods that people employ to organize, manage, and share information. It was initially conceived to complement people's mental functions, memory or even speech. A vast array of techniques has been employed that can be divided into a number of different classes [3]:

The first class covers the numerous techniques used to gather information, including those used by journalists, researchers, and spies; and, much more elaborately, the activities of research organizations, laboratories, surveys, and censuses, to name only a few.

The second class consists of techniques for naming, classifying, and organizing pieces of information to make them comparable and accessible in an effective way. The need to classify grows in proportion to the quantity of information, so classification techniques are normally connected with corporations that manage vast quantities of information, for example the police, the patent office, or even phone businesses.

Because information can take numerous forms, the third class consists of all of the techniques used to transform information from one form into another one and to screen it in a new way. Examples include turning narrative descriptions into lists, lists into statistical tables, statistics into graphs, or graphs into three-dimensional objects. There are numerous techniques that transform and output information, from engineering drawing to polling to mapmaking, and numerous corporations that do this sort of function.

The fourth class covers techniques created for storing and retrieving information, from historical artifacts such as dictionaries and encyclopedias, schedules and calendars, phone publications and directories, via corporations such as museums, archives, libraries, to the more recent electronic storage in databases.

Finally, the fifth class consists of techniques for communicating information. In this class, some methods, for example the postal system, messengers, the telegraph, the phone, or electronic mail, transmit information from individual to individual, while others, e.g. newspapers, radio, television, or the world wide web, broadcast information to a wider public.

This classification is only one example, and is certainly not the only one. Many information systems are dedicated to more than one function at a time, for example, newspapers are at the same time a means of communicating information and an information system that stores old news. In this sense, it is important to distinguish the form the information takes within the systems that handle it. What makes the complexity of the information age is the amount of data generated and the increasing number of systems required for its management, as well as the objectives that organizations employ these systems for.

### 1.1.3. The information revolution

The dynamic, evolutionary nature of data and information prompts us to ask questions about how everything started, what was the start point of this incredible information explosion and how individuals caused and managed this phenomenon? According to Michael Riordan and Lillian Hoddeson, two historians, today's information age started with the invention of transistors in the beginning of the fifties. Even this may be too recent a timeline to explain the significant changes in our culture brought about by the information revolution. Others have suggested for more ancient origins and each historian has a different date in mind. Many link the information age to the late nineteenth century, with the evolution of railroads and other large business enterprises spread across a continent. Others focus on the printing press or the introduction of, telegraphs and steam powered newspaper presses in the first half of the nineteenth century.

Since there seems to be little agreement about the beginning of the information age, a possible question that we can ask is: did the information age really begin or is it only a means that humans have invented to label what they cannot really explain? Although our current vision of the information sphere is largely influenced by what we hear or see via new technologies, such as the internet and other media, the data stream is rooted in ancient civilizations. Consider for example, the Egyptian or Maya hieroglyphics that continue to fascinate scientists today, providing new information and knowledge about their life styles, beliefs and traditions. Thus, we might conclude that the information age had no beginning, for it is as old as humankind.

Nevertheless, there have been periods in history that witnessed rapid accelerations or revolutions, related to the amount of information that people had access to and the creation of Commentaire [MSOffice1] :

new information systems to handle it. For example, the development of the written alphabet certainly contributed to the acceleration of information accumulation. Today, we live in what has been called the Information Age, also known as the Computer Age or the Information Era, characterized by the ability of individuals to transfer information freely, and to have instant access to knowledge that would have been difficult or impossible to find previously.

# 1.1.4. The road to Knowledge is paved with Data that generates Information

There are a huge number of diverse purposes for which individuals extract and use information. One of these is simply possession and the satisfaction it procures, for example, extensive libraries, collections, maps or even computer programs. In addition, having the information procures prestige; learning and especially initiation into impenetrable knowledge spheres of a given sector's secrets have conferred prestige and impressed the badly informed individuals throughout history, and even created international challenges between nations running after prestigious scientific discoveries. A good example is the famous challenge that opposed Russians and Americans while competing to be the forerunners of space exploration, and the millions of people sitting in front of their TVs watching Neil Armstrong stepping onto the moon for the first time.

Time is also an important factor in the equation. Most information is employed at a given point in time within a dynamic situation, for example in business, law, medicine, war etc., and generally results in some sort of decision making. The time required to extract and use the information depends on the quality of the raw data and the efficiency with which it was planned.

An efficient use of information involves processing, classification, storage, extraction and broadcasting of information rapidly and with minimal cost and effort. To achieve this, the information must be condensed, codified and structured in a methodical manner. Descriptive information has to be converted into data which can be represented in several formats such as words, numbers, alphanumeric codes, symbols, graphics, maps, scientific illustrations etc. The process is an iterative one: every time we use or generate data, and when we consume data, we produce new information that could be used by others and transformed into additional

data. Thus, the path to the creation of knowledge can be considered to be a conceptual labyrinth, as shown in Figure 2.



Figure 2 : Conceptual hierarchy of data, information and knowledge (Inspired from "Information: a Very Short Introduction", [4])

At the beginning of the knowledge discovery process, the data is generally unstructured. Although when we talk about data, many people think automatically of data stored in databases, the fact is that data, at least in its raw format, is often represented in many different ways. Structuring of the data allows an easy and reliable access and by adding semantic meaning, we begin to transform the data into information. Each time we modify the data, we generate a different type of information, which is more and more precise, ranging from descriptions of the general aspect of the data to descriptions of the mined knowledge. The different kinds of information can be grouped into five classes:

• The primary information is the information we first discover about data stored in databases for example, such as arrays of numbers, strings, graphs etc.


- The secondary information is the inverse of the primary information, characterized by its absence. As Carl Sagan said "Absence of Evidence is not Evidence of Absence" ("The Fine Art of Baloney Detection ", Chapter 12, page 221). The absence of data describing a problem, does not mean that we don't have information about it, since the absence itself could be sometimes much more informative.
- The meta-information refers to a set of indications about the nature of some other information; it generally describes properties such as location, format, updates, availability, etc.
- The operational information describes operations of the whole data system and the system's performance (the dynamics of the information).
- The derivative information is extracted from the other types of information, either directly or indirectly. It is generally what we obtain as inferential evidence or as a result of a comparative or quantitative analysis.

The final concept of knowledge is more difficult to define. Knowledge is defined by the Oxford English Dictionary as (i) expertise and skills acquired by a person through experience or education; the theoretical or practical understanding of a subject; (ii) what is known in a particular field or in total; facts and information; or (iii) awareness or familiarity gained by experience of a fact or situation.

### 1.1.5. Knowledge Discovery via Artificial Intelligence

The knowledge discovery process is often a very time consuming task, depending on the domain in which we evolve and the amount of the raw data available. As a consequence, scientists have tried to emulate human intelligence using sophisticated algorithms generally referred to as Artificial Intelligence approaches, in order to automatically achieve either everyday tasks or more specific missions such as:

- Making decisions, diagnosing, scheduling and planning using expert systems or neural networks
- · Evolving solutions to very complex problems using genetic algorithms
- Learning from a single previous example, where this is particularly relevant and using it to solve a current problem using case-based reasoning

36

Commentaire [MSOffice2] : ef ?

- Recognizing hand writing or understanding sensory data, simulated by artificial neural networks
- Identifying cause and effect relationships using data mining

Artificial intelligence technologies will be discussed in more detail in chapters 2-4.

## **1.2.** The Biological infosphere: the genomic revolution

Since the beginning of this century, the biological data landscape has been transformed by the rapid development of new high throughput genome technologies, including genome sequencing, gene expression analysis, proteomics, interactomics, etc. As a consequence, bioinformatics is playing an increasing active role in the analysis of modern biology. It is now impossible to develop research initiatives or studies without having a preceding search or consultation of several bioinformatics resources. The reason is that the large-scale data produced by today's genome technologies can only be used efficiently with various kinds of computerized analysis workflows. As a consequence, new computational strategies are being developed to handle the information, as well as mathematical or statistical strategies, in order to discover the biological knowledge hidden in the data.

Bioinformatics can therefore be defined as the application of computational as well as analytical techniques to solve biological issues. More specifically, bioinformatics describes the search for and usage of patterns or inherent structure in biological data such as genome sequences, and the development of novel methods for database access and querying. The closely related term, computational biology, is more frequently used to talk about the physical or mathematical simulation of biological processes.

In this chapter, we will review the recent evolution of the bioinformatics field, from the pre-genomic era, when most studies involved a single biological entity (gene, RNA, protein, etc...), to the post-genomic era and the development of bioinformatics to become a more integrative and complex discipline involving the management and characterization of large amounts of heterogeneous data.

### 1.2.1. Bioinformatics in the pre-genomic era

Bioinformatics has been used since the early 1960s to organize information and to answer fundamental questions in the life sciences [5]. At that time, an expanding collection of

Commentaire [MSOffice3] : <u>he origins of bioinformatics.</u> Hagen JB. Nat Rev Genet. 2000 Dec;1(3):231-6.



molecular sequences provided both a source of data and a set of interesting problems that were infeasible to solve without the power of computers. The idea that macromolecules carry information became a central part of the conceptual framework of molecular biology and numerous methods were developed to analyze the information flow between the raw DNA sequence and the structure, function and evolution of the encoded molecules.

### 1.2.1.1 DNA sequence analysis

The DNA sequence contains the blueprint for the potential development and activity of an organism, but the implementation of this information depends on the functions of the encoded gene products (nucleic acids and proteins). Thus, the identification/characterization of non-coding RNA and protein-coding genes is one of the first objectives of numerous bioinformatics approaches.

The most powerful computational methods for predicting RNA genes, such as transfer RNAs (tRNAs)<sup>-</sup> ribosomal RNAs (rRNAs), small nuclear RNAs (snRNAs), or microRNA, make use of the fact that many gene families are conserved in evolutionarily related genomes. This comparative approach is the best way to detect sequence and structure features that have been conserved during evolution and that are therefore likely to play a functional role. Examples of such methods include for example **DYNALIGN and FOLDALIGN**. Ab initio methods exist, which aim to predict locally stable RNA structures for example [6], but these are more rarely used. RNA prediction methods are reviewed in more detail in 2007 by Meyer. [7]

Protein coding regions of a genome can be identified by searching for Open Reading Frames (ORFs), defined as long sequences of codons (triplets of nucleotides) limited by a start codon and a stop codon. The coding regions can be distinguished from non coding ones since they have different statistical properties, such as their codon usage, defined by a matrix of 64 possible codons. Among the first mathematicians interested in characterizing biological molecules, there are those who established the so called Hidden Markov Models (HMMs), that use species-specific parameters related to coding and non-coding regions [8]. Such approaches have been used to successfully predicting the coding regions of prokaryotic organisms [9]. Locating the coding regions in eukaryotic genomes is less evident, since they are scattered as small DNA fragments throughout the genome and represent a small percentage of the total sequence. Furthermore, they are not continuous in the genome, but are **Commentaire [MSOffice4]** : efs

**Commentaire [MSOffice5] :** eyer IM. A practical guide to the art of RNA gene prediction, Briefings in Bioinformatics 2007.

split into regions, known as exons, separated by non-coding regions, known as introns. The separate exons are then joined during transcription in the cell by a specific process called splicing. The junctions between the exons and introns contain splicing signals, which combined with the specific properties of the coding regions, are used in many gene finding programs e.g. Genscan [10], in addition to statistical models such as HMMs [11].

In addition to these ab initio statistical methods to reveal gene structures and predict their existence inside a genomic sequence, other approaches such as sequence similarity searches can be used to find genes. As more and more genomes are sequenced, existing methods for gene annotation tend to use more than one genomic sequence to predict gene structures [12]. These comparative methods are based on the assumption that, due to selection pressure, coding regions are more conserved than non-coding regions. They have the benefit of providing more accurate gene identification, especially if multiple genomes across a variety of evolutionary distances are available [13]. As an example, a modified version of the dynamic programming algorithm, known as spliced alignment, has been developed to detect a set of exons that is similar to a known protein sequence [14] or expressed sequence tag (EST, sequenced fragments from mRNAs) [15].

Today, the statistical and sequence similarity based approaches are often used in a cooperative manner in large software systems dedicated to gene prediction and annotation [16] and have lead to significant progress. Nevertheless, gene annotation remains a crucial research area in bioinformatics, that will continue to evolve as long as large amounts of new sequences need to be characterized.

### 1.2.1.2 Protein function analysis

Once a gene and its functional transcript have been identified, the next step is the prediction of its function. Bioinformaticians and computational biologists have developed hundreds to thousands of different methods and techniques to analyse gene sequences and extract information about the mechanisms by which they function.

One of the most widely used approaches is to transfer functional information from an annotated gene, generally obtained from a well documented model-organism, to an unannotated one, based on the assumption that two sequences with a high degree of similarity have most likely evolved from a common ancestor (i.e. the sequences are homologous) and

that they are therefore likely to share the same functions. Protein functional annotations are stored in a wide variety of resources ranging from general sequence databases, such as Uniprot or Refseq to more specialized databases, dedicated to a specific organism, or genetic disease for example. Functional information can also be found in protein family databases, such as the InterPro database [17] the CDD Conserved Domain Database [18], or the COG database [19].

Given the number and diversity of these resources, the task of protein function prediction has become a complex one (Figure 3).



Figure 3 : Protein function annotation typical workflow [20]

The process generally begins with a database search for similar sequences using a dedicated tool, such as BLAST (Basic Local Alignment Search Tool) [21], although this approach has a number of drawbacks. For example, Rost and collaborators [22] showed that with the growth of the sequence databases, the number of proteins that have no annotated

40

**Commentaire [MSOffice6]** : efs

reference is expanding exponentially. They estimated the number of proteins that could be annotated automatically by BLAST-based methods to be under 30% of all proteins (with an error rate of 5%). They added that even if we allow an error rate of more than 40%, there is no existing annotation for more than 30% of all proteins. Furthermore, errors can be introduced by the fact that homologous sequences do not always share the same function. For example, [23] showed that even with a high degree of sequence similarity, enzymatic function could be different and not conserved.

Such annotation errors from automatic function prediction methods often find their way into the public databases and are further propagated by subsequent genome annotation projects [24, 25]. One of the solutions to this problem has been the use of multiple sequence comparisons or alignments, where the annotation from a set of related sequences is cross-validated to ensure its high quality before being transferred to the unannotated sequence [26].

When homology-based methods are not applicable, for example when no similar sequences are found, other approaches can be used to characterize the unknown sequence that rely on finding matches to known functional motifs. For example, within a functional domain in a protein sequence, that could be several hundred amino acids long, less than 10% of the residues are directly involved in the protein's active site [27]. Instead of considering the entire sequence, the presence of a specific signature can therefore give some functional clues. Signatures may be located at a single position or may cover several positions, known as a fingerprint or pattern. Some specific databases offer the possibility to search for known functional motifs. For example, PROSITE [28] contains manually curated biologically important motifs, corresponding to three types of signature: patterns, rules and profiles. Additional well-known motif databases include BLOCKS [29] and PRINTS [30].

## 1.2.1.3 Protein Structure Prediction

The biological activity of a protein sequence is determined by its 3D-structure, which differs from one protein sequence to another. Many small proteins are organized in a single unit, known as a domain, whereas many others are formed by the combination of several structural domains, motifs or repeats. These basic building blocks, their modular presentation and organization contribute to the functional diversity in proteins. One of the largest examples is the protein titin which is a 34350 residue long scaffold protein. A number of databases exist

41

**Commentaire [R7]** : Laquelle exactement ?

that organize the known protein 3D structures, the most widely known structure database being the Protein Data Bank (PDB) [31]. Other resources, such as CATH [32] and SCOP [33] store protein structures by splitting them into domains and classifying them in a hierarchical fashion. The first uses the topology, architecture and class to classify proteins, whereas the latter relies on classes, folds, superfamilies and families.

Some methods have been developed to predict the 3D structure of a protein based only on its primary sequence [34], known as *ab initio* methods. Nevertheless, the most accurate *in silico* method for determining the structure of an unknown protein is homology structure modeling. This approach assumes that sequence similarity between proteins usually indicates a structural resemblance and relies on the availability of a related protein with known 3D structure in the public databases.

## 1.2.1.4 Phylogenetic analysis

Phylogenetics can be defined as the estimation of evolutionary relationships and describes the classification of organisms according to their evolutionary history. It is an integral part of the science of systematics that aims to establish the phylogeny of all organisms based on their characteristics. Phylogenetics is also central to evolutionary biology as a whole as it is the condensation of the overall paradigm of how life arose and developed on earth.

A phylogenetic history is generally represented as a graph-like diagram or tree-like representation. The main idea behind phylogenetics is that members of the same group or clade share the same evolutionary history, and compared to members of other clades, they are more likely to be more closely related. During evolution, some features disappear and others appear, which means that for a given group, its members share unique features that are not present in the common ancestor. These features (or characters) could be anything observable or "describable", from two organisms that have developed a spinal column to two sequences that have mutations located at the same position.

Gene sequences have now replaced anatomical features to become the standard "characters" used to investigate organismal phylogenies. Phylogenies are generally built using homologous sequences i.e. sequences that share a common ancestor, but that may or may not have common structure and function. Homologs can be divided into orthologs and paralogs

(Fitch). Orthologs are genes in different species that evolved from a common ancestral gene by speciation. Normally, orthologs retain the same function in the course of evolution. Identification of orthologs is therefore critical for reliable prediction of gene function in newly sequenced genomes. Paralogs are genes related by duplication within a genome. In contrast to orthologs, paralogs often evolve new functions, even if these are related to the original one.

A typical phylogenetic analysis based on molecular sequences consists of five steps:

- Homologous sequences are identified by database searches and selected according to a certain confidence threshold.
- The sequences are then compared to identify similarities and differences between them.
- "Informative" positions in the sequences are identified.
- The phylogenetic tree is then constructed, based on the similarities observed in the sequences and a specific evolutionary model.
- The tree is then evaluated to determine a reliable tree topology.

Each step is fundamental for the analysis and ought to be treated appropriately. For instance, trees are only as good as the initial sequence comparisons they are determined from. When carrying out a phylogenetic analysis, it is therefore frequently informative to construct trees based on various adjustments of the parameters used at each step to observe how they affect the tree.

Recently, a number of databases have been developed to store phylogenetic trees, for example:

- TreeFam (www.treefam.org) is a database of phylogenetic trees of animal genes. It aims at developing a curated resource that gives reliable information about ortholog and paralog assignments, and evolutionary history of various gene families [35, 36].
- PhylomeDB (phylomedb.org) is a public database for complete collections of gene phylogenies (phylomes) that allows users to interactively explore the evolutionary history of genes through the visualization of phylogenetic trees and multiple sequence alignments [37].
- TreeBASE (www.treebase.org) stores phylogenetic trees and the multiple sequence alignments used to generate them from published research papers [38].
  - 43

## 1.2.2. Genome sequencing projects and biological data growth

Biology in the 21<sup>st</sup> century has been revolutionized by the development of high throughput genome sequencing and the availability of complete genome sequences for numerous organisms. The first free-living organism to be sequenced was that of Haemophilus influenzae (1.8Mb) in 1995, and it was only a matter of time before a draft of the first human genome **Erreur ! Source du renvoi introuvable.**was published in 2001 [39]. In 2008, the Genome Online Database (GOLD) archived 1100 completed genome projects, which represented approximately 2-fold growth over two years [40]. The genomes were distributed as follows: 914 bacterial, 68 archeal and 118 eukaryotic genomes. There were also many more ongoing sequencing projects, representing 4543 initiatives, including 3271 bacteria, 110 archaea and 1162 eukaryotes.



Figure 4 : Human genome project timeline

Many of these genomes, when completely sequenced, are submitted to publicly available databases such as Genbank [41], EMBL [42] or DDBJ [43]. Unfortunately, this is not systematic. In fact, due to the rapid increase in the number of sequencing projects, some of them do not have an associated publication in the literature. The problem concerns a considerable fraction: 408 of the 1100 genomes available in GOLD.

Other large-scale data resources are also emerging from high-throughput experimental technologies such as microarrays for systematically analyzing gene expression profiles or yeast two-hybrid systems and mass spectroscopy for detecting protein-protein interactions. The impact of the genome projects is thus not simply an increased amount of sequence data, but the diversification of molecular biology data. Table 1 lists some examples of these data resources, which have been denoted with the suffix '-ome' (from the Greek for 'all', 'every' or 'complete') to indicate studies undertaken on a large or genome-wide scale.

Transcriptome	the mRNA complement of an entire organism, tissue		
	type, or cell		
Proteome	the entire complement of proteins in a given biological		
	organism or system at a given time		
Metabolome	the population of metabolites in an organism		
Secretome	the population of gene products that are secreted from		
	the cell		
Lipidome	the totality of lipids in an organism		
Interactome	the complete list of interactions between all		
	macromlecules in a cell		
Spliceosome	the totality of the alternative splicing protein isoforms		
Kinome	The totality of protein kinases in a cell		
Neurome	The complete neural makeup of an organism		
ORFeome	the totality of protein-encoding open reading frames (ORFs)		
Unknome	The totality of genes of unknown function		
Textome	The body of scientific literature which text mining can analyse		
Resourceome	The full set of bioinformatics resources		

### Table 1 : Some examples of '-omics' data resources

The availability of numerous complete genome sequences and other large datasets has led to a paradigm shift in biological research. Traditionally, biologists accumulated

knowledge based on a starting hypothesis concerning a particular biological issue, and then proceeded to experimental assays to confirm the strength or weakness of their theories. This hypothesis-driven research approach can now be complemented by new technology-based or data-based approaches.

In comparison to the traditional hypothesis-based research, the new models have many novel aspects, such as a high throughput platform, a torrent of data collection, and a free data exchange among the entire scientific community. As a consequence, computational analysis of the large amounts of data produced by genomics has partially replaced wet lab experiments, introducing new possibilities for generating biological knowledge. The field of bioinformatics, combining life sciences with computer and physical sciences, offers an exciting playground for the creation and deployment of new technologies for data mining and analysis, with the ultimate goal of answering biological and medical questions.

In the rest of this chapter, we will discuss the new challenges and problems posed by the high throughput genomics data.

## 1.2.2. Bioinformatics in the post-genomic era

Since the emergence of high throughput technologies and their application to the elucidation of molecular biology systems, a new era of biological and biomedical research has begun. The emphasis in biology and bioinformatics is shifting from studying individual components, such as genes, RNA or proteins in isolation, to the study of the vast networks that biological molecules create, which regulate and control life.



Figure 5 : The Omix matrix and Integromics ; Bioresource and materials are utilized by biotechnology and the resultant data can be organized by the Omics matrix. Inside omics matrix, numerous integration occurs. The whole set of components and and integration programs often called as pipelines can be named as integromics. The integromics finally produces higher dimentional data, information and knowledge. (Source : omics.org)

Such system-level studies (Figure 5) are aimed at the elucidation, design or modification of complex structures, such as macromolecular complexes, regulatory pathways, cells, tissues or even complete organisms. Systems biology aims to explain such complex biological systems by using a combination of experimental, theoretical and computational approaches. The goal is not simply to produce a catalogue of the individual components or even interactions, but to understand how the system components fit together, the effect of each individual part on its neighbors, and how various parameters such as concentrations, interactions, and mechanics change over time [44, 45]. The new outlook is characterized by the basic idea of "emergent" properties, i.e. it considers global behavior not explicable in terms of the individual, single components of the system [46].

An integrated systems approach to understanding biology can be described as an iterative process that includes (1) data collection and integration of all available information

(ideally all components and their relationships in the organism), (2) mathematical modelling of the system, (3) generation of new hypotheses and (4) experimentation at a global level. In this new approach, global sets of biological data are integrated from as many hierarchical levels of information as possible. This is the initiation point for the formulation of detailed graphical or mathematical models, which are then refined by hypothesis-driven, iterative systems perturbations and new data integration. Cycles of iteration will result in a formal working model of how the systems function dynamically in the growth, development and maintenance of the organism in the context of its environment. Ultimately, these models will explain the systems or emergent properties of the biological system of interest. Once the model is sufficiently accurate and detailed, it will allow biologists to accomplish two tasks not possible before: (i) to predict the behavior of the system given any perturbation and (ii) redesign or perturb the gene regulatory networks to create completely new emergent systems properties.

The rest of this section will describe in more detail some of the new "omics" data resources and the computational approaches that have been developed recently to analyze them.

### 1.2.3.1 Comparative genomics

Due to the fact that a variety of distinct genomes have been sequenced it is now conceivable to tackle comparative studies of genomes, giving rise to a new research field known as comparative genomics. By comparing genomes from related species we can identify functional regions, such as genes or regulatory elements that are conserved among species, as well as the regions that give each organism its unique characteristics. Comparative genomics also provides a powerful tool for studying evolutionary changes among organisms, helping to begin to understand some of the fundamental mechanisms by which genes and genomes evolve.

In order for researchers to use an organism's genome efficiently in comparative studies, data about its DNA must be in large, contiguous segments, anchored to chromosomes and, ideally, fully sequenced. Furthermore, the data needs to be organized to allow easy access for researchers using sophisticated computer software to conduct high-speed analyses. A number of resources have been developed specifically to store and make available the complete

genomes, e.g. the UCSC Genome browser (genome.ucsc.edu), NCBI complete genomes (www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/sites/genome) or Ensembl genomes (www.ensembl.org).

### 1.2.3.2 Transcriptomics

The study of transcriptomics, also referred to as expression profiling, examines the expression level of mRNAs in a given cell population, for example in a given tissue and at a specific time during the development of an organism. Because it includes all mRNA transcripts in the cell, the transcriptome reflects the genes that are being actively expressed at any given time. Common technologies for genome-wide or high-throughput analysis of gene expression are cDNA microarrays and oligo-microarrays, cDNA-AFLP and SAGE. By comparing the transcriptomes of different cell populations, e.g. healthy versus diseased individuals, or normal versus cancer cells, genes that are under-expressed or over-expressed can be identified.

In addition to the various transcriptome databases dedicated to a specific organism, cell line, cancer, stem cells, etc., a number of more general databases have been developed, including the Gene Expression Omnibus GEO) [47] at the NCBI (www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/geo/) or ArrayExpress database [48] the EBI the at (www.ebi.ac.uk/microarray-as/ae/).

The analysis of transcriptomes can be complicated by the large-scale nature of data, a high level of noise and the variability and low reproducibility of expression microarrays. Key areas in data analysis include experimental design, the assessment of significance of differential expression, discriminant analysis and clustering. These require efficient data acquisition and storage, normalization between different data sets and visualization [49-51].

### 1.2.3.3 Proteomics

As the emerging field of proteomics continues to expand at an extremely rapid rate, the relative quantification of proteins, targeted by their function, has become its greatest challenge. Complex analytical strategies have been designed that allow comparative analysis of large proteomes, as well as in depth detection of the core proteome or the interaction network of a given protein of interest. The protocols being developed address many of the problems encountered in high-throughput proteomics projects, from the experimental design to the methods used for the interpretation of the mass spectrometry data and the search

engines used for the identification of the proteins in the different types of sequence data banks available. Dedicated databases include:

The PRIDE PRoteomics IDEntifications database (www.ebi.ac.uk/pride/) [52] is a centralized, standards compliant, public data repository for proteomics data. It has been developed to provide the proteomics community with a public repository for protein and peptide identifications together with the evidence supporting these identifications.

The PeptideAtlas (www.peptideatlas.org/) [53] is a multi-organism, publicly accessible compendium of peptides identified in a large set of tandem mass spectrometry proteomics experiments. Mass spectrometer output files are collected for human, mouse, yeast, and several other organisms, and searched using the latest search engines and protein sequences.

The ExPASy (www.expasy.org) [54] proteomics server of the Swiss Institute of Bioinformatics (SIB) is dedicated to the analysis of protein sequences and structures as well as 2-D PAGE.

### 1.2.3.4 Interactomics: protein-protein interactions

In order to understand the structure and the function of an integrated cellular network, ideally, we have to identify all functional protein-protein interactions in the different cells and tissues at any developmental stages and in any given physiological status [55]. Several interaction maps on a genome-scale have been established, based on experimental yeast two-hybrid [56] and co-affinity purification in conjunction with mass-spectrometry techniques. In addition, computational approaches have been developed that predict protein–protein interactions by relying upon shared characteristics of known interacting proteins [57] or phylogenetic evolutionary information [58].

Today, protein–protein interaction networks have been established for bacteria (Escherichia coli [59] and Helicobacter pylori [60]), the malarial pathogen Plasmodium falciparum [61], Saccharomyces. cerevisiae [62], the fruitfly Drosophila melanogaster [63], Caenorhabditis elegans [64] and human [65]. Many follow-up studies have analyzed the patterns of interacting components, or topological properties, which are revealed by the resulting networks [66] and have argued the potential fundamental biological implications.

A number of dedicated resources have been developed, such as BIND [67], IntAct [68] / and STRING [69]. While BIND and IntAct contain only reliable, experimentally determined Commentaire [j8] : Gary D. Bader, Doron Betel and Christopher W.V. Houge, BIND: the biomolecular interaction network database, Nucleic Acids Res 31 (1) (2003), pp. 248-250. fs414) [4]Henning Hermjakob, Luisa Montecchi-Palazzi, Chris Lewington and Sugath Mudali IntAct: an open source molecular interaction database, Nucleic Acids Res 1 (32Database issue) (2004), pp. 452-455 [5] Christian von Mering, Lars J. Jensen, Berend Snell and Sean D. Hooper, STRING: known and predicted protein-protein associations, integrated and transferred across organisms. Nucleic Acids Res 33 (Database issue) (2005), pp. 433-437.

protein-protein interactions, STRING has a wider coverage. It contains both known and predicted protein interactions, including both direct (physical) and indirect (functional) associations. They are derived from four sources: genomic context, high-throughput experiments, (conserved) coexpression and the scientific literature.

### 1.2.3.5 Metabolomics

Metabolomics is dedicated to identifying the complete set of metabolites, or the metabolome, of the cell. The metabolome is thus complementary to the transcriptomes and proteomes described above. As one of the most recent elements of omics data types, work is still ongoing toward the improvement of the methods that generate these data, but generally they rely on mass spectrometry, NMR spectroscopy and vibrational spectroscopy [70] to analyse the metabolite contents that are extracted from isolated cells or tissues. Given the extremely varied collection of biomolecules and the significant dynamic range of metabolite concentrations that need detection, current strategies must find hundreds of different chemical entities. Even with these challenges and the resultant restrictions, metabolomics is rapidly turning into a common tool for exploring the cellular state of many systems, such as plants, the human red blood cell and microbes , and also in pharmacology and toxicology, in metabolic-engineering applications and in human nutritional research [71].

## **1.3** Conclusion

The life sciences have entered a new information age characterized by a flood of complex, heterogeneous data and a vast array of computational algorithms designed to analyze and extract the knowledge buried in the data. Novel bioinformatics solutions are now needed that will provide a conceptual framework for representing, integrating and modeling the data as well as deciphering complex patterns and systems to generate new knowledge. Chapter 2 will discuss the database infrastructures developed to collect, process and store biological data. Chapters 3 and 4 will then discuss algorithms developed in the context of artificial intelligence for knowledge extraction, focusing on machine learning and knowledge based expert systems.

# Chapter 2

2. Biological databases:

# Data storage and warehousing is great, data quality is better

The first biological databases (actually flat files), established in the early 1980s, represented nucleotide sequences, and contained several million bases. Today, over 106 billion nucleotide bases from more than 108 million individual sequences and 300,000 organisms are currently contained in the databases of the International Nucleotide Sequence Database Collaboration (INSDC) represented jointly by EMBL, Genbank and DDBJ. The combined data represents a fundamental bioinformatics resource since most of the other bioinformatics data is more or less dependent on inference from nucleotide sequences.

Unfortunately the information stored within the archives is not consistently well annotated. A large majority of the sequences and the associated annotations are themselves the result of computational predictions, with their inherent inaccuracy [72]. As an example, a recent study of a specific enzyme family, the ribonucleotide reductases [73], showed that only 23% of the sequences were correctly annotated in Genbank. Furthermore, when submitting sequences to databases, scientists generally choose which sequence annotations they want to publish, considering that these annotations are more pertinent than others. Consequently, nothing can be inferred from the absence of information in the databases. To make things worse, the errors in the databases are often propagated when new sequences are predicted. Most of the gene prediction methods rely on the existing information stored in the databases. This means that prediction models rely on the information that is defined at a given time and

Commentaire [MSOffice9] : ALId: validation of protein sequence quality based on multiple alignment data. Bianchetti L, Thompson JD, Lecompte O, Plewniak F, Poch O. J Bioinform Comput Biol. 2005

when the information is upgraded, the established models may not be accurate and in some cases are obsolete.

More recently, the whole genome sequencing technologies have given rise to a new generation of specialist databases storing data from specific species that have the particularity to hold the sequence and its automatically generated annotation made available in advance. Generally the content of such resources are frequently revised, especially when the genome has been recently deciphered. The Ensembl database of metazoan genome annotation is a good example of such a resource [74].

In addition to nucleotide databases, protein sequence databases are also of great interest in the biological informational context. While the automatically annotated databases, such as TrEMBL [75] or Refseq [76], represent a rich source of data, the most reliable store of functional information today is probably Swiss-Prot, a subsection of the Uniprot Knowledge base (UniprotKB) [75] is the annotations in Swiss-Prot are manually curated from scientific literature, and although they are less complete than the automatic databases, they are frequently used to infer information about proteins not yet subjected to specific experimental study.

Nucleotide and protein sequence databases are cited here as examples of biological databases, since they are considered as the "ancestors" of database types. Today, several hundred bioinformatics databases exist in total, with many resources concentrating on a particular taxonomic or methodological field. As an example, a lot of databases are dedicated to model organisms such as yeasts [77, 78], mouse [79] etc. These specialized databases generally represent more detailed information sources about gene and protein functions within their taxonomic scope. As mentioned in Chapter 1, other databases are dedicated to different types of data, including transcriptomic, proteomic, interactomic, phenotypic resources.

In parallel with biological component databases, the scientific literature describing them is also an invaluable source of information. MEDLINE, frequently accessed as part of PubMed, is the largest database containing biological literature with its 10 million citations. Bioinformatics and literature databases are linked through cross-references. As an example, UniprotKB cross-references hundreds of other resources (including MEDLINE and PubMed)

which give scientists direct access to more detailed information on a particular biological component.

In this dynamic heterogeneous environment consisting of numerous different data resources, including both generalist and specialist databases, the entries stored in the different databases are often strongly related and mutually dependent on each other. For example, the function of a gene depends on its biological context: its interactions with other genes, the pathways they are involved in, their expression under certain conditions, etc. Similarly, the function of an interaction depends on the function of the interacting partners. To retrieve the broader view of an entity, a biologist usually has to search multiple databases. This poses a number of problems. Most public databases have their own format and querying system. Links between databases are not always available and are not always coordinated between the different resources, giving rise to problems of consistency, redundancy, connectivity and synchronization. Even on a small scale, for example for a single protein or complex, data integration becomes a daunting task. To overcome these problems, new data integration systems have been developed that read data from multiple sources, perform simple transformations of data into a unified format and provide access to the data.

## **2.1 Data collection**

To obtain an integrated view of a biological system, an essential perquisite is the collection of data from different databases, which are generally distributed over various geographical sites. Two main approaches have been developed to address this task: data warehouses and distributed databases.

### 2.1.1. Data warehouses

Data warehousing first emerged in the nineties as a solution to the information explosion in the business domain. A data warehouse solution is a structured repository of a large amount of data collected from various sources to support an analytical process. In the Business Intelligence field, sales and client data distributed across the company are integrated within a data warehouse framework. Concepts such as customer buying behavior can then be mined from such a system to prepare targeted marketing campaigns and strategies. Data warehousing in bioinformatics, as in other fields, involves collecting data from the different

databases, integrating the data and resolving conflicts and transforming it in order to discover the hidden knowledge. This being said, the nature of biological information and the systems that generate these data dictates some specific requirements for biological data warehousing.

The two most widely used data warehousing systems in bioinformatics are SRS and Entrez. SRS is maintained by the European Bioinformatics Institute (EBI) and represents a gateway to over 100 bioinformatics databases [80]. It is powerful but complex, allowing the construction of inter-database queries in a generic manner. Entrez is maintained by the NCBI and offers a simpler interface with less support for structured queries, but data retrieval is more rapid. Both data warehouses allow literature mining by the incorporation of PubMed for example.

EnsMart [81] is another warehouse-based system that is distinguished by its userfriendly query front end that allows users to compose complex queries interactively. EnsMart runs on Oracle and MySQL. Data types currently supported by EnsMart are genes, SNP data, and controlled vocabularies. The Atlas system [82] provides a data warehouse based on relational data models, which locally stores and integrates biological sequences, molecular interactions, homology information and functional annotations of genes. First, Atlas stores data of similar types using common data models and second, integration is achieved through a combination of APIs, ontology and tools to perform common sequence and feature retrieval tasks. Because the databases are installed locally, data retrieval is direct, efficient and relatively simple. Warehousing guarantees that the data needed are always available. Also users have control over the databases installed, which versions are used and when they are updated. The disadvantage of this approach is that the overhead costs can be very heavy in terms of the hardware required for database installation and maintenance.

### 2.1.2. Distributed databases

Distributed systems provide an alternative to data warehousing approaches. Here, software is implemented to access heterogeneous databases that are dispersed over the internet and to provide a query facility to access the data. Many examples have been developed. OPM (Object Protocol Model) [83] uses an entity model and generic servers that retrofit the data and unify data sources, and provides a query language OPM-MQL to query the distributed data. The integrated data can be output in XML format. IBM's DiscoveryLink

[84] uses a relational model and the SQL language for modelling and accessing distributed data. TAMBIS [85] is a semantic-based system utilising ontologies and a services model to support user queries. BioMOBY [86] like TAMBIS, is also ontology-based and service-model driven. SEMEDA [87] is an ontology based semantic metadatabase and is implemented as a 3 tiered architecture consisting of a relational database (backend) and jsp 1.1 (java server pages) as the middle tier, which dynamically generates the html frontend. Using this architecture has several advantages: data (ontologies and database metainformation) can be consistently stored independently from the application and can also be retrieved or imported by using the various built in interfaces and tools of the DBMS. These implementations do not house the data locally, but instead query the original data resource for available services before sending queries. These systems are powerful for interrogating disparate data sources. However, a disadvantage is that large queries may take a long time to return or may not be returned at all. Thus, remote access requires complex systems to manage communication between the server and the client, particularly when errors occur because remote systems are not available.

A number of solutions have been developed recently to address these problems. For example, the Distributed Sequence Annotation System (DAS) [88] allows sequence annotations to be decentralized among multiple third-party annotators and integrated on an asneeded basis by client-side software. The communication between client and servers in DAS is defined by the DAS XML specification. A more general solution is the SOAP (Simple Object Access Protocol) for access to distributed webservices. SOAP uses XML requests and responses for the transport of information between different nodes. An alternative is the REST (Representational State Transfer) approach for getting information content from a web site by reading a designated web page containing an XML (Extensible Markup Language) file that describes and includes the desired content.

## 2.2. Data integration and validation

One of the major benefits of both data warehouses and distributed databases is the possibility to integrate data from the different resources. This is achieved via cross-referencing of entries from different databases, as well as data enrichment with information from the literature, although this is not void of problems or limitations. Accurate cross-references are crucial to obtaining relevant results, but the current data volume exceeds the

ability for manual curation of almost all bioinformatics resources. As an illustration, about 220,000 records in the UniProtKB are manually curated, but despite this high volume of data, this represents only 7% of the total records. To tackle this problem, cross-referencing has to be done automatically by means of identifier tracking or by comparison of the properties of entities to establish their equivalence. This is not a simple task since the identifiers used in the different databases are generally not the same. The problem is even more complex when searching the literature, due to the widespread use of synonyms and homonyms for genes, proteins and other biological entities and the lack of well-established standards. Another important problem when searching for cross-referenced information is related to the data quality in bioinformatics databases. Data conflicts, occurring when the "same" object is described by different properties in different resources, need to be resolved, or at least signaled to the user.

The problems cited above are just some examples showing that badly cross-referenced information could be considered as a brake to knowledge discovery in bioinformatics. But, what about well annotated and cross-referenced information? There is no evidence that no problems exist in this case and here are some examples of possible deficiencies that could occur:

- 1. The lack of naming standardization between resources means that records with the same name in different databases may be conceptually dissimilar
- 2. The content could be different depending on the bioinformatics repository and the data included in databases describing the same biological object could be different
- 3. There are no rules or guidelines concerning database updates and each resource follows its own policy concerning either the update frequency or the update protocols (automatic, manually curated, etc.). This results in a lack of synchronization between bioinformatics databases leading to, on the one hand, the existence of out-of-date information, and on the other hand, incoherence between data describing the same biological object in two or more repositories. It is then difficult to determine which one is more accurate or true.

It is clear that the usefulness of a warehouse or distributed database system is dependent on the coherence of the data it contains. Efforts are now underway to improve the reliability

of the shared bioinformatics data resources, for example by the standardization of vocabularies using ontologies such as the Gene Ontology [89] or the development of standards for data representation in emerging research areas such as transcriptomics and proteomics.

# 2.3. Data Extraction and Querying: The more we formalize, the better we learn!

Traditionally, knowledge was extracted from biological databases by searching for specific information concerning the object of interest. This was generally achieved using dedicated data analysis software. To illustrate this, we can consider the typical case where the object of interest is a gene, identified by a protein name or identifier that, once submitted as a query to one of the resources cited above (UniprotKB, Ensembl, etc.), returns a database record containing more or less relevant information known about that entity. The data of interest could also be a raw sequence and in this case, several tools exist to compare the new sequence with existing annotated sequences, such as BLAST or FASTA [90]. For protein sequences, with their modular domain organization, the new sequence can also be compared to known domains in databases such as InterPro or CDD. Other examples of traditional data analyses were described in Chapter 1.

Bioinformatics data is a very generic term, generally employed to describe information that is contained in databases, or data that we use as input to several tools and programs. Furthermore, most bioinformatics data is represented in textual format: records in databases, flat files, the battery of bioinformatics formats (Genbank, EMBL, Fasta, PDB, ...), in addition to program outputs from sequence database searches, multiple sequence alignments, biological feature predictions etc. All these information resources contain biological knowledge that is more or less structured, sometimes containing the same information but presented differently, and sometimes providing extra information that is not integrated or taken into account during a specific analysis process.

Despite the numerous efforts to facilitate data exchange in bioinformatics, a true standardized format for all is not expected for tomorrow. Even for the same data type, we can find lots of differences, for example, GenBank developed the ASN.1 format (Abstract Syntax

Notation One) for sequence data, while Swiss-Prot designed a different one. Another example is the introduction of XML (Extensible markup Language) as a generic data exchange format which then gave rise to a battery of bioinformatics XML representations: GBSeq XML for GenBank, SPTr-XML for SwissProt, XEMBL for EMBL, GEML for Gene Expression Markup Language, MAGE-ML for MicroArray and Gene Markup Language, and many others. The existence of so many data formats represents a major problem in bioinformatics data management, In this context, important progress have been achieved in computer science concerning the standardization of machine readable vocabularies or ontologies, which provide explicit specifications of commonly used abstract models [91]. In addition to concept definitions, ontologies provide a basis for the development of software able to reason and infer properties and relationships in a given domain. With the emergence of ontologies, one important task was to make the concepts persistant and communicable, and as a consequence, standard formats such as RDF (Resource Description Framework) and OWL (Web Onltology Langage) were developed. As an illustration, RDF allows the establishment of statements concerning a particular domain using the Subject-Predicate-Object model. Here, the Subject and the Object refer to concepts, while the Predicate refers to the relationship between them.

Despite the problems described above, the standardization of data has facilitated the recent introduction of Knowledge Discovery approaches in bioinformatics, employing various techniques and methods such as data and text mining or machine learning described in the next chapter.

# Chapter 3

## 3. From Data Integration to Knowledge Discovery

## The role of Computational Intelligence in Bioinformatics

During the last few years, bioinformatics and computational biology have relied mainly on statistical algorithms to formalize, extract and analyze efficiently the vast amount of information available in databases. However, the recent explosion of the volumes of data available, combined with the growing complexity and heterogeneity in terms of data types and data quality, means that biologists now need tools that can represent their data in a comprehensible fashion, annotated with contextual information, estimates of accuracy and intuitive explanations. As a consequence, combining bioinformatics / computational biology with computational intelligence methodologies has become an important area of research in intelligent information processing. Computational intelligence combines elements of data mining and machine learning approaches to create systems that are, in some sense, intelligent.

Section 3.1 describes the data mining approaches used to explore large data sets and to discover hidden patterns. The main goal of these methods is to understand relationships, validate models or identify unexpected relationships. Section 3.2 discusses more specific algorithms designed to automatically extract information from the literature. Finally, section 3.3 introduces machine learning algorithms that allow the computer to learn from data. The learning process involves data mining to extract the patterns but the end goal is to use the knowledge to do prediction on new data,

60

## **3.1.** Data mining in bioinformatics

Humans have "manually" extracted patterns from data for centuries, but the increasing volume of data in modern times has called for more automated approaches. As data sets have grown in size and complexity, data analysis has increasingly been augmented with automatic data processing. Data mining is the process of selecting, exploring and modeling data in order to extract hidden patterns and to produce new, meaningful and useful information. It has been defined as "The non trivial extraction of implicit, previously unknown, and potentially useful information from data" [92]. In bioinformatics this process could refer to finding motifs in sequences, to discovering expression profiles shared by different genes, to identifying specific features in cellular images, and so on.

Technically, data mining software allows users to analyze data from many different dimensions or angles, categorize it, and summarize the relationships identified. Thus, data mining can be defined as the process of finding correlations or patterns among dozens of fields in large relational databases. Generally, four types of relationships are sought:

- Clusters: Data items are grouped according to specific features. For example, genes can be grouped into clusters sharing similar gene expression profiles.
- Classes: New data is assigned to one of a set of predetermined groups or clusters. For example, a protein sequence can be assigned to a predefined family group. The class can then be used to infer structural or functional information.
- Associations: Data can be mined to identify associations. The discovery of genotypephenotype relationships is an example of associative mining.
- Sequential patterns: Data is mined to anticipate behavior patterns and trends. For example, gene regulation could be predicted based on the presence of specific promoter motifs and proteins, such as transcription factors.

In order to discover these relationships, statistics methods, such as clustering/classification, or machine learning methods such as decision trees, artificial neural networks and support vector machines (SVM) and pattern recognition are used. The most appropriate method will depend on the nature of the input data and the specific requirements of the user. Some examples of data mining in bioinformatics are discussed in the following sections.

Commentaire [MSOffice10] rawley WJ, Piatetsky-Shapiro G and Matheus CJ. Knowledge Discovery in Databases, 1992 AAAI Press

## 3.1.1. Classification

Classification is used to predict the group (or class) a given object belongs to. Classification techniques are widely used to mine health.care data, for example, to generate diagnostics from breast cancer data [93] or to diagnosis pigmented skin lesions [94]. In the latter example, they compared several classification methods and concluded that, for their data, logistic regression, artificial neural networks and SVM outperformed K-nearest neighbor classification and decisions trees.

### 3.1.2. Clustering

Clustering might be considered today as the most used data mining technique for biological data. Clustering can be defined as the process of grouping a set of objects into classes of similar objects. For example, in order to target groups of genes sharing similar expression profiles, Eisen used hierarchical clustering on the Saccharomyces cerevisiae gene expression data and produced very promising results that were later validated experimentally [95, 96]. More recently, other clustering techniques have been developed, including k-means clustering, used by [97] amongst many other, back propagation neural networks [98], fuzzy clustering [99] and many more.

### 3.1.3. Association rules

Association rule learning is a popular and well researched method for discovering interesting relations between variables in large databases. A simple example taken from the analysis of data recorded by point-of-sale (POS) systems in supermarkets would be the rule: {onions, potatoes}=>{beef} which indicates that if a customer buys onions and potatoes together, he or she is likely to also buy beef.

In the past few years, association rules have been used to find knowledge patterns hidden in various biological datasets. Many of the early applications used the Apriori algorithm [100] that was developed for mining sparse and weakly correlated data. However, when mining dense or correlated data, like most biological data, the efficiency of this algorithm drastically decreases [101]. Moreover, with such data, a huge number of rules are extracted and many of them are redundant, thus complicating their interpretation [102]. GenMiner [103] is a generic tool designed for association rule discovery in biological data. It

allows the analysis of datasets integrating multiple sources of biological data represented as both discrete values, such as gene annotations, and continuous values, such as gene expression measures.

### 3.1.4. Sequential patterns

Sequential pattern mining is used to find the relationships between occurrences of sequential events, to search for specific order of the occurrences. To quote a simple example, if we consider data from a book seller database, we could mine the following pattern: 80% customers who bought the book *Database Management* typically bought the book *Data Warehousing* at the same time, and then later bought the book *Knowledge Discovery in Databases* after a certain time interval. In bioinformatics, this has obvious applications in the analysis of DNA or protein sequences, but it can also be used to search for patterns in time-associated data, for example, data in relational databases which are time-stamped, or time-series gene expression profiles.

Tan and Gilbert compared three types of data mining techniques on *E. coli*, yeast, promoters and HIV data sets [104]. They compared rule-based learning systems (rules, decision trees ...), ensemble methods (stacking, bagging, boosting) and statistics based learning systems (naive Bayes, SVM, artificial neural networks, etc ...) and concluded that no single algorithm used alone were able to achieve a good classification of the biological data used. In the same way, they proved that when combining different methods, the classifications were most accurate. This observation was confirmed a year later by Katsuri and Acharya [105] who used this time unsupervised techniques to find gene clusters using a mixture of data (promoter sequences, DNA binding motifs, gene ontologies, data location, etc.) and showed that collaborative methods identified correlated genes more accurately.

# 3.2. Text mining in Bioinformatics: focus on literature

Literature mining is probably the most studied problem in bioinformatics textual analysis today. Most, if not all, existing applications are based on the processing and analysis of literature and other scientific publications; despite the fact that nearly all biological data

could be considered to be textual. In the rest of this section, we will give an overview of some developments in the field, although this is far from being an exhaustive list.

### 3.2.1 Functional annotation

Basic computational applications in bioinformatics rely on protein sequence similarity and database annotation. The EUCLID system [106] is one illustration of the use of text mining in bioinformatics, classifying proteins into functional groups based on Swissprot database keywords. Other examples are based on rules for transferring database information based on the relationship between proteins in families. Information Extraction (IE) methodologies have also been deployed to mine information that is not automatically available from biological databases. As an example Andrade et al, created one of the first programs in this field by detecting terms in the scientific papers that are statistically correlated to literature associated with protein families [107].

Other methodologies that rely on ontologies such as the Gene Ontology (GO), are more efficient than keyword based methodologies in structuring knowledge. Thus, Raychaudhuri et al, explored the deployment of different document-classification approaches for this task [108], while Xie et al, combined textual information with sequence similarity scores to enhance functional annotation using GO [109].

## 3.2.2 Cellular localization

Determining the subcellular localization of a protein is generally achieved based on experimental studies. Several studies have also addressed this problem using information extraction from literature. For example, Nair and Rost in 2002 used lexical information accessible through annotation database records to predict protein location [110], while Stapley et al developed an SVM-based system to classify proteins depending on their subcellular localization from PubMed abstracts [111].

### 3.2.3 DNA-expression arrays

Text mining techniques applied to scientific papers provide an alternative insight into expression array experiments by the statistical analysis of the words cited in abstracts that are linked to genes displaying similar expression patterns. Blaschke et al. in 2001 created a method called GEISHA using this type of statistical methodology [112]. Other approaches

use manually curated keywords or concepts (from GO for example). As an example, FatiGO system [113] detects relevant GO terms for a gene cluster, with respect to the reference set of genes. The PubGene system [114] is another approach where the analysis of microarray data relies on already constructed literature networks for human genes linked to MeSH and GO terms.

### 3.2.4 Protein interactions

Most of genome sequencing projects such as Drosophila genome has generated large scale protein interaction networks gathered into maps. This constitutes a valuable new source of information concerning protein function and possible new drug targets. Text mining could help a lot in that sense by connecting the new experiments to the already archived information in the literature, which provides a complementary analysis for bioinformatics predictions of protein interactions [115].

### 3.2.5 Molecular medicine

Biomedical domain is full of cases where text mining, NLP (Natural language processing) and knowledge-discovery solutions have been employed. Among these solutions, some are dedicated to the discovery of the relationship between relevant entities like chemical substances and diseases, some others are used to extract and structure information contained in clinical records and finally some others are focused on molecules of interest interaction visualization.

Automatic textual research to find out new, so-called 'undiscovered', public knowledge and to check suggested hypotheses had been primary carried out by Swanson and co-workers. They achieved an indirect relationship between dietary fish oil and the blood circulation dysfunction often known as Raynaud's disease [116]. A series of papers on both topics was accessible at the time, but no thoughts about using dietary fish oil to cure this illness had been suggested before. This theory was likewise followed by other scientists to get indirect relationships between estrogen and Alzheimer's disease [117]. These kind of methods have been employed not just to suggest new therapeutic approaches but also to get potentially negative drug outcomes or also animal models for particular human disorders. NLP methods have also been built to assist the processing of medical information included in healthcare documents. As an example MedLEE [118] is a structure that treat medical records to extract

and structure scientific facts, and has been used for a long time by the New York Presbyterian Hospital Clinical Information System. Other illustrations consists on for example the GENIES approach, within the integrated GeneWays system [119], carries out automated analysis, and extraction of molecular-interaction information and pathways from full-text journals.

# 3.3. The role of Machine Learning in modern bioinformatics

Machine learning is a subfield of artificial intelligence concerned with the design and development of algorithms for intelligent problem solving and decision making. Although data mining and machine learning exploit similar algorithms, the goals of the two approaches are different. While the goal of data mining is to discover interesting patterns or associations in large datasets, machine learning aims to use such patterns to make predictions or inferences and to generate new knowledge. Machine learning has a wide spectrum of applications including natural language processing, speech and handwriting recognition, object recognition in computer vision, game playing and robot locomotion, as well as bioinformatics. The general framework for machine learning is as follows: The learning system aims to determine a description of a given concept from a set of concept examples. Concept examples can be positive (iron, when teaching the concept of metals) or negative (marble). The learning algorithm then builds on the type of examples to develop algorithms for making decisions. For example, a chess computer game uses previous games to learn winning strategies. Some machine learning systems attempt to eliminate the need for human intervention (unsupervised learning), while others adopt a collaborative approach between human and machine (supervised learning). In most cases, human intervention cannot, however, be entirely eliminated, since the system's designer must specify how the input data is to be represented and what learning mechanisms will be used.

## 3.1.1. Supervised learning

Supervised learning is a machine learning technique for deducing a function from training data. The training data consist of pairs of input objects and desired outputs. The output of the function can be a continuous value (called regression), or can predict a class of the input object (called classification). The task of the supervised learner is to predict the

value of the function for any valid input object after having seen a number of training examples (i.e. pairs of input and target output). To achieve this, the learner has to generalize from the presented data to unseen situations in a "reasonable" way. Supervised learning thus generates a function that maps inputs to desired outputs, for example, using genetic algorithms, artificial neural networks, Bayesian networks, decision trees or inductive logic programming.

## 3.1.2. Unsupervised learning

Unsupervised learning attempts to determine how the data are organized. Many of the methods are based on the data mining methods that are used to preprocess data. In contrast to supervised learning, the learner is given only input examples: the corresponding outputs are unknown.

The most widely used forms of unsupervised learning are clustering and dimensionality reduction approaches, such as Principal Components Analysis (PCA) or Independent Components Analysis (ICA). In this type of learning, the goal is not to develop a mapping function, but simply to find similarities in the training data. For instance, clustering individuals based on demographics might result in a clustering of the wealthy in one group and the poor in another. Although the algorithm cannot assign labels to the clusters, it can produce them and then use the clusters to assign new objects into one or the other of the clusters. This is a data-driven approach that can work well when there is sufficient data; for instance, social information filtering algorithms, such as those that Amazon.com use to recommend books, are based on the principle of finding similar groups of people and then assigning new users to groups.

		- Support Vector Machines - Decision Trees
Molecular Clustering/Classification	Superfamily classification Ortholog/paralog grouping of genes 3D fold classification	Clustering algorithms - Hierarchical cluster analysis - Kohonen neural networks Classification algorithms - Bayesian Networks - Neural Networks
Structure/function prediction	Motif extraction Functional site prediction Cellular localization prediction Coding region prediction Transmembrane segment prediction Protein secondary structure prediction Protein 3D structure prediction	Pattern recognition and learning algorithms - Discriminant analysis - Hierarchical neural networks - Hidden Markov models - Formal grammar
	RNA secondary structure prediction RNA 3D structure prediction Protein 3D structure prediction	- Genetic algorithms - Neural networks - Hidden Markov models
Sequence alignment (homology search)	Pairwise sequence alignment Database search for similar sequences Multiple sequence alignment Phylogenetic tree reconstruction Protein 3D structure alignment	Optimization algorithms - Dynamic programming - Simulated annealing

Figure 6 : Some of the most well known Machine learning algorithms applied in Bioinformatics.

Machine learning techniques have been widely used in bioinformatics (Figure 6). For example, Rocco and Critchlow developed a method for finding classes of bioinformatics data sources and integrating them in a unified interface, with the aim of reducing the human effort required for the maintenance of data repositories [120, 121] and [122] used artificial neural networks to develop a tool for the prediction of breast cancer. Tang suggested a model for exploring both empirical and hidden phenotype structures through gene expression data [123]. Bioinformatics applications of machine learning in the specific context of expert systems will be discussed in more detail in the next chapter.

Chapter 4 : Knowledge Bases Expert Systems in Bioinformatics

# Chapter 4

## 4. Knowledge based expert systems in Bioinformatics

The field of bioinformatics has reached the end of its first phase, where it was mainly inspired by computer science and computational statistics. The motivation behind this chapter is to characterize the principles that may underlie the second phase of bioinformatics, incorporating artificial intelligence techniques in novel systems that attempt to learn, reason and provide answers to problems that until now required the intervention of a human expert.

Such 'expert' systems must first capture the knowledge pertinent to a specific problem. Techniques exist for helping to extract knowledge from human experts. One such method is the induction of rules from expert generated examples of problem solutions. This approach differs from data mining in that the examples used to train the system are selected by experts. They are designed to cover the important real-world cases and as a consequence, the 'knowledge base' is generally of much higher quality. In contrast, data in databases often contain redundant, irrelevant, noisy data. Furthermore, experts are available to confirm the validity and usefulness of the discovered patterns. Thus, expert systems represent an ideal tool for the new field of integrative systems in systems-level biology (section 4.1). We will then enumerate some real world applications of expert systems in the biological field (section 4.2) before making a focus on one type of expert system: Knowledge Based Expert Systems (section 4.3).

## 4.1. Expert systems for systems-level biology

The development of high-throughput biotechniques and the subsequent omics studies is leading the way to exciting new routes of scientific exploration. Instead of being restricted to the analysis of a handful of genes or proteins per experiment, whole genomes and proteomes can be analyzed today. This allows biologists, with the help of bioinformaticians, to explore

### Chapter 4 : Knowledge Bases Expert Systems in Bioinformatics

more complicated processes than were possible before [124-127]. This task is not easy to achieve. The more new data we have, the harder their exploitation is. The human genome project [128] provides a good illustration: once the technological limitations were overcome and the DNA sequence was obtained, the goals rapidly moved to its annotation, i.e. the identification of the genes encoded by the genome and their functions. Hence, like the biotechniques, large projects have been started, with research groups collaborating to find solutions to complex bioinformatics problems.

As a consequence, new layers of bioinformatics annotations, predictions and analysis results are being added to the experimental omics data. The new data is then made progressively available through public web-accessible data resources such as Ensembl or the UCSC Genome Browser. Because the data is broadcast via the web, this results in new problems of data management, maintenance and usage. Easy access is clearly necessary to allow biologists to use these data as a source of information for *in silico* data integration experiments.

Nevertheless, integrating these heterogeneous data sets across different databases is technically quite difficult, because one must find a way to extract information from a variety of search interfaces, web pages and APIs. To complicate matters, some databases periodically change their export formats, effectively breaking the tools that allow access to their data. At the same time, most omics databases do not yet provide computer-readable metadata and, when they do, it is not in a standard format. Hence, expert domain-specific knowledge is needed to understand what the data actually represents, before it can be used in integration experiments. This limits the practical scale and breadth of integration, given the variety and amount of data obtainable from distributed resources.

Today's bioinformatics analyses require a combination of experimental, theoretical and computational approaches and a crucial factor for their success will be the efficient exploitation of the mass of heterogeneous data resources that include genomic sequences, 3D structures, cellular localisations, phenotype and other types of biologically pertinent data. However, several restrictions of these 'omics' data have been highlighted. For example, data emerging from 'omic' approaches are noisy (data can be missing due to false negatives, and data can be misleading due to false positives) and it has been proposed that some of these

#### Chapter 4 : Knowledge Bases Expert Systems in Bioinformatics

limitations can be overcome by integrating data obtained from two or more distinct approaches [129].

In this context, scientists from different spheres must collaborate in order to provide the expert knowledge for their specific domain. As the application of an 'intelligent' expert system depends on the biological data available, we now have a "vicious circle" in the sense that we need computational intelligence to treat biological data, but the choice of the computational intelligence approach is data driven, which sometimes makes it difficult to choose between different algorithms. Nevertheless, expert systems have been used in biology for several years now, and the next section presents a non exhaustive list of some of the most important applications.

## 4.2. Expert systems: real-world applications

### 4.2.1 Medical diagnostics

One of the first direct applications of expert systems in a biological discipline was in the medical domain. This is a very data-rich domain and the use of knowledge based systems has become essential.

Knowledge-based expert systems are popular in areas where knowledge is much more widespread than data, which then requires heuristics as well as reasoning logic to discover brand new knowledge. Ackoff described data as a raw entity that just exists, while knowledge is understood to be an accumulation of relevant, useful information [130]. In the healthcare industry, a balanced mixture of domain knowledge and data are employed for the detection, diagnosis, (interpretation) and treatment of diseases. Depending on the specific problem, the balance between data and knowledge may differ and appropriate systems are selected and deployed, such as rule-based arguing (RBR), model-based arguing (MBR) or case-based reasoning (CBR).

RBR, MBR and CBR are complementary approaches with different advantages and disadvantages. Consequently, some systems make use of a mixed strategy, for example (i) BOLERO [131] enhances rule-based diagnoses according to the information available concerning the patient, (ii) MIKAS [132] combines RBR and CBR to automatically produce a menu designed for a specific patient, (iii) PROTOS [133] is essentially used in medical audiology and incorporatees knowledge acquisition for heuristic classifications, (iv) CASEY
[134] combines CBR and MBR in order to resolve the problem of Causal models based on previously observed cases and, at the same time, computing the similarity between behaviors to extend possible solutions, (v) T-IDDM [135] is a multi-modal reasoning system that helps physicians by providing an accurate decision support tool for the diagnosis of type 1 diabetes by integrating RBR, CBR and MBR.

The transformation of implicit knowledge into explicit rules often leads to a change of data content. An alternative to this type of inference is statistical inference using methods such as Bayes theorem, which models a probabilistic value for every suggested result (e.g. disease in medical domain). Two examples of this are the diagnosis and management of pacemaker-related troubles using an interactive expert system [136] and expert systems for healthcare forecasts [137]. Such expert systems may be effectively employed for reciprocally exclusive diseases and independent symptoms, but fail whenever several symptoms have a similar factor and a patient may suffer from more than one disease. Consequently, there are many situations where knowledge-based expert systems are not suitable. For this kind of scenario, artificial neural networks have been developed. Artificial neural networks (ANN) are extensively employed for diagnosis when a large amount of data is available, for example in cardiology [138]. An alternative approach is the use of a Genetic Algorithm (GA), for example [139] who used GA to find the number of neurons of the hidden level.

Commentaire [j11] : ???

#### 4.2.2. DNA sequence analysis: Forensic science

An interesting application of expert systems is the analysis of DNA sequences in forensic science. We have all heard about forensic science thanks to Hollywood movies and TV series, where a scientist simply inserts a tube into a machine and immediately recognizes the suspect. A lot of us think that this is somewhat exaggerated and untrue. Well this is not the case. Forensic Science is a very developed science and due to its importance, governments devote large budgets to research in this domain.

The control of forensic biological materials and the decryption of DNA profile data is complicated and needs significant resources both in terms of equipment and of experienced staff. However the development of automatic equipment to speed up the extraction of DNA from forensic samples, to evaluate and amplify the samples, along with multi-capillary electrophoresis instrumentation has shifted the importance towards the information analysis level. Typically, the analysis and decryption of DNA profile data was carried out by hand by

at least two independent experienced, knowledgeable human researchers. Nevertheless, this can be a time-consuming procedure and recently, DNA profiling interpretation has been automated by exchanging the human staff with bioinformatics software and notably, expert systems.

Knowledge based expert systems have been developed as a way to speed up the DNA analysis, therefore decreasing the time required to analyse a significant quantity of DNA profiles, for example, GeneMapper ID (Applied Biosystems, Foster City, CA, USA), FaSTR DNA [140] or FSS-i3 (The Forensic Science Service DNA Expert System Suite FSS-i3).

In each one of these expert systems, rules are activated each time a DNA profile is not from a unique source or when the standard of the profile is substandard. The expert system then requests the analyst to manually re-examine the information and accept or reject the assignment made. The combined usage of such automated systems has been shown to offer impartial "expert" analyses, which improve consistency and save analysis time in comparison to manual processing.

### 4.2.3. Protein sequence analysis

The sequencing of complete genomes for numerous organisms has resulted in the classification of a large number of new proteins of unknown biological function. In order to investigate the biological activity of the proteins, the first step is to determine its primary structure, i.e. the ordered sequence of amino acids making up the protein. Knowledge of the amino acid sequence then allows predictions to be made about protein structure and the relationships between different proteins. Expert systems have been used to solve a number of different problems in protein sequence analysis.

The precise determination of amino acid sequences in proteins is a very important analytical task in biochemistry, and the most common type of instrumentation used for this employs Edman degradation [141]. In this method, N-terminal amino acid residues are repeatedly labelled and cleaved from the protein. The amino acids are then identified as their phenylthiohydantoin (PTH) derivatives by high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC is a form of column chromatography used frequently in biochemistry and analytical chemistry to separate, identify, and quantify compounds).

In this context [142] developed an expert system that uses heuristic rules built by human experts in protein sequencing. The system is used to the chromatographic data of phenylthiohydantoin-amino acids acquired from an automated sequencer. The peak intensities in the current cycle are compared with those in the previous cycle, while the calibration and succeeding cycles are used as ancillary recognition criteria when necessary. The retention time for each chromatographic peak in each cycle is corrected by the corresponding peak in the calibration cycle at the same run.

As another case study of an ES application, [143] reported an expert system for rapid recognition of metallothionein (MT) proteins. MT proteins are responsible for regulating the intracellular supply of biologically essential zinc and copper ions and play a role in protecting cells from the deleterious effects of high concentration metal ions. MT is generally induced when the organism experiences certain stress conditions and therefore, recognition of MT from tissues or from animal models is very important.

In order to develop an expert system for this task, the physical and chemical characteristics of MT proteins were derived based on a set of experiments conducted using animal models. The derived characteristics were broken into a set of rules, including (1) proteins with low molecular weight versus high molecular weight, (2) proteins with metal content versus no metal content, (3) the presence or absence of aromatic amino acids and (4) sulphur content versus no sulphur content. The derived rules (consisting of a series of attributes and value pairs, followed by a single conclusion that contains the class and the corresponding class value) were produced using the ID3 algorithm [144], and a minimum number of rules were selected using human expertise to maximize true positive recognition. The rules were then formulated into an IF – THEN – ELSE algorithm.

ProFound [145] is another example of a protein recognition expert system. Developed in the Rockfeller University, this expert system is a search engine which employs a Bayesian algorithm to identify proteins from protein databases using mass spectrometric peptide mapping data. The algorithm ranks protein candidates by taking into account individual properties of each protein in the database as well as other data relevant to the peptide mapping experiment. The program consistently identifies the correct protein(s) even when the data quality is relatively low or when the sample consists of a simple mixture of proteins.

Mass spectrometry is an analytical technique for the identification of the basic composition of a sample or molecule. It is also used for the determination of the chemical structures of molecules, such as peptides (parts of protein sequences) and other chemical compounds.

The rapid growth of protein and DNA sequence databases together with technological improvements in biological mass spectrometry (MS) has made the association of mass spectrometric peptide mapping with database searching a good method for the rapid identification of peptides. The principle of this traditional technique involves degradation of proteins with an enzyme having high specificity (usually trypsin), the resulting peptides are subject to analysis by either matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization mass spectrometry (MALDI-MS) or electrospray ionization mass spectrometry (ESI-MS). Employing an appropriate computer algorithm, the masses established for the resulting peptides are compared with masses calculated for theoretically possible enzymatic degradation products for every sequence in a protein/DNA sequence database. This technique suffers from several small problems that taken together cause errors and inaccuracies. Nevertheless, the method is relatively insensitive to unspecified modifications and/or sequence errors in the database because high-confidence identifications can be made even when the mapping experiment yields data on only a small percentage of the sequence.

Protein recognition by the described approach requires a strategy for determining the best match between the studied biological entity and a sequence in the database. Known systems for finding the best match include ranking by number of matches and a scoring scheme based on the observed frequency of peptides from all proteins in a database in a given molecular weight range (the so-called "MOWSE score"). When the mass spectral data are partial (i.e., only a few peaks in the spectrum) and/or of low mass accuracy, the "number-of matches" approach may be deficient to make a useful recognition. While the MOWSE scoring scheme is much superior to the number-of-matches approach, it does not take into account the individual properties of any given protein. An optimal scoring system requires that individual properties of each protein in the database be considered.

Thus, the ProFound team developed an expert system for identifying proteins using MS peptide mapping data. The system ranks protein candidates using a Bayesian algorithm that takes into account individual properties of each protein in the database as well as other

information pertinent to the experiment. Bayesian probability theory has been widely used to make scientific inference from incomplete information in distinct fields, including biopolymer sequence alignment, NMR spectral analysis, and radar target recognition. When the system under study is modeled properly, the Bayesian approach is believed to be always among the most coherent, consistent, and efficient statistical methods. Bayesian probability theory was used to make logical inference about the identity of an unknown protein sample against a protein sequence database.

### 4.2.4. Genome annotation

Discovering genes, their organization, structure and function is a significant problem in the genomic and post-genomic era. Two areas of genomic biology are specialized in this process, structural and functional annotation. Structural annotation describes the task of discovering genes, their location over a biological sequence, their exon/intron structure and predicting the protein sequences that they encode. Functional annotation aspires to predict the biological function of genes and proteins.

Both structural and functional annotation generally call for the composite chaining of different algorithms, software and procedures each using its own distinct group of input parameters and output format. At important steps of these "pipelines", expert biologists are required in many cases to make crucial decisions, alter the dataset, evaluate intermediate outcomes, manually handle as well as change different files, etc. which can be laborious and may end up being error prone. With regard to the management of large volumes of data published by sequencing projects, automation of these workflows is critical. Several groups have developed annotation systems to automate these pipelines, especially in the area of structural annotation (e.g. Ensembl pipeline).

In terms of functional annotation, several systems automate pairwise similarity based methods, and much less have automated the more complicated phylogenomic inference techniques. Gouret et al addressed this problem by developing Figenix, which is an expert system that allow much more automation of the annotation process [146]. The system mimics the biologist's expertise at each step of the annotation process and currently has 8 different workflows of structural and functional annotation.

# 4.3. Expert System Design: focus on knowledge-based systems

Human expert knowledge is a combination of a theoretical understanding in a given domain and a collection of heuristic problem-solving rules that experience has shown to be effective. Knowledge-based expert systems can be constructed by obtaining this knowledge from a human expert and transforming it into a form that a computer may use to solve similar problems. The 'expert' program does not know what it knows through the raw volume of facts in the computer's memory, but by virtue of a reasoning-like process of applying a set of rules to the knowledge. It chooses among alternatives, not through brute-force calculation, but by using some of the same rules-of-thumb that human experts use.

Thus, an expert system can be described as a computer program that simulates the judgment and behavior of experts in a particular field and uses their knowledge to provide problem analysis to users of the software. There are several forms of expert systems that have been classified according to the methodology used [147], including:

- rule-based systems use a set of rules to analyze information about a specific class of problems and recommend one or more possible solutions
- case-based reasoning systems adapt solutions that were used to solve previous problems and use them to solve new problems
- neural networks implement software simulations of massively parallel processes involving the processing of elements that are interconnected in a network architecture
- fuzzy expert systems use the method of fuzzy logic, which deals with uncertainty and is used in areas where the results are not always binary (true or false), but involve grey areas and the term "may be".

Expert systems were first used in the mid-1960s when a few AI researchers, who grew tired of searching for the illusive general-purpose reasoning machine, turned their attention toward well-defined problems where human expertise was the cornerstone for solving the problems [148]. But expert systems really took off with the development of the internet in the 1990's, which facilitated access to data and deployment of applications. Today, thousands of systems are in routine use world-wide, particularly in business, industry and government.

The major components of a typical knowledge-based expert system [149] are shown in Figure 7, and are described below:

- The knowledge base contains domain expertise in the form of facts that the expert system will use to make determinations. Dynamic knowledge bases, known as truth maintenance systems, may be used, where missing or incorrect values can be updated as other values are entered
- The working storage is a database containing data specific to a problem being solved
- The inference engine is the code at the core of the system which derives recommendations from the knowledge base and problem-specific data in the working storage
- The knowledge acquisition module is used to update or expand dynamic knowledge bases, in order to include information gained during the expert system experiments
- The user interface controls the dialog between the user and the system.



Figure 7 : Typical expert system architecture, components and human interface. Experts usually use Working Storage techniques (Databases) and Knowledge Bases as a start point for an expert system. These bases serve to learn the (Inference Engine which is accessible to the user through a User Interface depending on the application. Each time the system is used, the

### Knowledge Base is enriched through Knowledge Acquisition modules that catch new information generated by the user who might also be an expert.

In this context, we can define an expert system as a framework that manages information dynamically by the integration of dedicated analysis tools. The tools to be used in any particular situation are chosen by special modules that reason about the best algorithms to use according to the information type and features. The reasoning part may be created using current Artificial Intelligence concepts and subsequently incorporated in the expert system which may also include workflows as an elementary module.

The following general points about expert systems and their architecture have been demonstrated [150]:

- The sequence of steps used to analysis a particular problem is not explicitly programmed, but is defined dynamically for each new case
- Expert systems allow more than one line of reasoning to be pursued and the results of incomplete (not fully determined) reasoning to be presented
- Problem solving is accomplished by applying specific knowledge rather than a specific technique. This is a key idea in expert systems technology. Thus, when the expert system does not produce the desired results, the solution is to expand the knowledge base rather than to re-program the procedures.

As expert system techniques have matured into a standard information technology, the most important recent trend is the increasing integration of this technology with conventional information processing, such as data processing or management information systems. These capabilities reduce the amount of human intervention required during processing of large-scale data, such as genome-scale biological data.

### Chapter 5

### 5. Multiple Alignment of Protein Sequences: a case study for Expert Systems in Bioinformatics

### 5.1. Introduction

Protein multiple alignment represents an ideal case study for the development of knowledge-based expert systems in bioinformatics, for a number of reasons. First, proteins are the molecular workhorses of biology, responsible for carrying out a tremendous range of essential functions, such as catalysis, transportation of nutrients, and recognition and transmission of signals. Second, the genome sequencing projects are providing huge amounts of raw data, in the form of protein sequences. The sequences are not equally distributed, since some evolutionary branches are much more widely studied than others and some important protein families more widely studied than others. Furthermore, the new sequences are mostly predicted by automatic methods and thus, contain a significant number of sequence errors. The problem has been exacerbated by the next generation sequencing technologies that can sequence up to one billion bases in a single day at low cost. However, these new technologies produce read lengths as short as 35-40 nucleotides, resulting in fragmentary protein sequences [151]. Third, protein sequence analysis has a long history and is one of the most widely studied fields in bioinformatics. In particular, hundreds of methods have been developed for multiple alignment construction and analysis. Some of the most important of these methods will be discussed in detail in chapter 6.

This chapter begins with a brief discussion of protein function and evolution (section 5.1). Protein multiple alignment is then discussed in more detail. Section 5.2 describes the fundamental role of multiple alignments in many bioinformatics applications. Section 5.3 then describes the most widely used methods for multiple alignment construction and analysis.

Commentaire [j12] : Pop M, Salzberg SL Bioinformatics challenges of new sequencing technology. Trends Genet. 2008 Mar;24(3):142-9.

<sup>80</sup> 

### 5.2. The protein world

### 5.2.1. Protein sequence, structure and function

**Commentaire [j13]**: j'ai pris cette section de ma these. tu trouveras les refs la-dedans.

Classified by biological function, proteins include the enzymes, which are responsible for catalyzing the thousands of chemical reactions of the living cell; structural proteins, such as tubulin, keratin or collagen; transport proteins, such as hemoglobin; regulatory proteins, such as transcription factors or cyclins that regulate the cell cycle; signaling molecules such as some hormones and their receptors; defensive proteins, such as antibodies which are part of the immune system; and proteins that perform mechanical work, such as actin and myosin, the contractile muscle proteins.

Every protein molecule has a characteristic three-dimensional shape or conformation, known as its native state. Fibrous proteins, such as collagen and keratin, consist of polypeptide chains arranged in roughly parallel fashion along a single linear axis, thus forming tough, usually water-insoluble, fibres or sheets. Globular proteins, e.g., many of the known enzymes, show a tightly folded structural geometry approximating the shape of an ellipsoid or sphere. The precise 3D structure of a protein molecule is generally required for proper biological function, since the specific conformation is needed that cell factors can recognise and interact with. If the tertiary structure is altered, e.g., by such physical factors as extremes of temperature, changes in pH, or variations in salt concentration, the molecule is said to be denatured; it usually exhibits reduction or loss of biological activity.

The process by which a protein sequence assumes its functional shape or conformation is known as folding. Protein folding can be considered as a hierarchical process, in which sequence defines secondary structure, which in turn defines the tertiary structure (Figure 8). Other molecules, such as chaperones, may also direct the folding of large newly synthesized proteins into their native 3D structure.



Figure 8 : Different levels of protein structure (from Principles of biochemistry, Horton, Moran, Ochs, Rawn, Scrimgeour). The ribbons represent examples of the four levels of protein structure. (a) The linear sequence of amino acid residues defines the primary structure. (b) Secondary structure consists of regions of regularly repeating conformations of the peptide chain, such as alpha helices and beta sheets. (c) Tertiary structure describes the shape of the fully folded polypeptide chain. The example shown has two domains. (d) Quaternary structure refers to the arrangement of two or more polypeptide chains into a multi-subunit molecule.

Although most protein sequences have a unique 3D confirmation, the inverse is not true. A 3D structure does not have a unique sequence, i.e. the size of the structure space is much smaller than the size of the sequence space. It is commonly assumed that there are around 1000 different protein folds, covering 10,000 different protein sequence families [152]. A direct relationship has been clearly established between protein sequence similarity and conservation of 3D structure [153-155].

Although exceptions exist, it is generally believed that when two proteins share 50% or higher sequence identity; they will generally share the same structural fold. However, in the so-called "twilight zone" of 20–30% sequence identity, it is no longer possible to reliably infer structural similarity [156]. High sequence identity, but low structural similarity can occur due to conformational plasticity, solvent effects or ligand binding. Conversely, proteins

in the 'twilight zone' of sequence similarity (<25% identity) can share surprisingly similar 3D folds [157].

The relation between 3D fold and function is much more complex [158, 159] and the same fold is often seen to have different functions. After translation, the posttranslational modification (PTM) of amino acids can extend the range of functions of the protein by attaching to it other biochemical functional groups such as acetate, phosphate, various lipids and carbohydrates, by changing the chemical nature of an amino acid (e.g. citrullination) or by making structural changes, such as the formation of disulfide bridges [160]. With respect to enzymes, local active-site mutations, variations in surface loops and recruitment of additional domains accommodate the diverse substrate specificities and catalytic activities observed within several superfamilies. Conversely, different folds can perform the same function, sometimes with the same catalytic cluster and mechanism (for example, trypsin and subtilisin proteinases). General rules seem to be that for pairs of domains that share the same fold, precise function appears to be conserved down to  $\sim 40$  % sequence identity, whereas broad functional class is conserved to  $\sim 25$  % [161]. These results highlight the need to look beyond simple evolutionary relationships, at the details of a molecule's active site, to assign a specific function.

#### 5.2.2. Protein evolution

During evolution, random mutagenesis events take place, which change the gene sequences that encode RNA and proteins. There are several different types of mutation that can occur. Point mutations substitute a single nucleic or amino acid residue for another one. Residue insertions and deletions also occur, involving a single residue up to several hundred residues. Other evolutionary mechanisms at work in nature include genetic recombination, where DNA strands are broken and rejoined to form new combinations of genes. Some of these evolutionary changes will make a protein non-functional, e.g. most mutations of active site residues in an enzyme, or mutations that prevent the protein from folding correctly. If this happens to a protein that carries out an essential process, the cell (or organism) containing the mutation will die. As a result, residues that are essential for a protein's function, or that are needed for the protein to fold correctly, are conserved over time. Occasionally, mutations

occur that give rise to new functions. This is one of the ways that new traits and eventually species may come about during evolution.

### 5.2.3. Protein comparative analysis

By comparing related sequences and looking for those residues that remain the same in all of the members in the family, we can learn a lot about which residues are essential for function [162]. Thus, multiple sequence comparison or alignment has become a fundamental tool in many different domains in modern molecular biology, from evolutionary studies to prediction of 2D/3D structure, molecular function and inter-molecular interactions etc. By placing the sequence in the framework of the overall family, multiple alignments not only identify important structural or functional motifs that have been conserved through evolution, but can also highlight particular non-conserved features resulting from specific events or perturbations [163, 164].

### 5.3. Multiple sequence alignment

There exist two main categories of sequence alignment: pairwise alignment (or the alignment of two sequences) and multiple alignment. Pairwise alignments are most commonly used in database search programs such as Blast and Fasta in order to detect homologues of a novel sequence. Multiple alignments, containing from three to several hundred sequences, are more computationally complex than pairwise alignments and in general simultaneous alignment of more than a few sequences is rarely attempted. Instead a series of pairwise alignments have the advantage of providing an overall view of the family, thus helping to decipher the evolutionary history of the protein family. Multiple sequence alignments are useful in identifying conserved patterns in protein families, which may not be evident from pairwise alignments. They are also used in the determination of domain organisation, to help predict protein secondary/tertiary structure and in phylogenetic studies.

The purpose of any sequence alignment, whether pairwise or multiple, is to show how a set of sequences may be related, in terms of conserved residues, substitutions, insertion and deletion events (indels). In the most general terms, an alignment represents a set of sequences using a single-letter code for each amino acid (for protein sequences) or nucleotide (for

DNA/RNA sequences). Structurally / functionally equivalent residues are aligned either in rows, or more usually in columns (Figure 9). When the sequences are of different lengths, insertion-deletion events are postulated to explain the variation and gap characters are introduced into the alignment.

	H1 H2 H3 🕅 🕅 V V V H4
HBB HUMAN	VELTPEEKSAVTALUGKUNVDEVGGEALGRLLVVYPUTORFFESFGDLSTPDAVMGNPKVKAHGKKVLGAFSDGLAHLDI
HBB HORSE	VQLSGEEKAAVLALUDKVN-EEEVGGEALGRLLVVYPUTQRFFDSFGDLSNPGAVMGVPKVKAHGKKVLHSFGEGVHHLDI
HBA HUMAN	
HBA HORSE	
MYG PHYCA	VLSEGEWQLVLHVWAKVEADVAGHGQDILIRLFKSHPETLEKFDRFKHLKTEAEMKASEDLKKHGVTVLTALGAILKKKG
GLB5 PETMA	PIVDTGSVAFLSAAEKTKIRSAUAPVYSTVETSGVDILVKFFTSTPAAQEFFPKFKGLTTADQLKKSADVRUHAERIINAVNDAVASMD
LGB2 LUPLU	galtesqaalvkssweefnan ipkhthrffilvleiapaakdlfsflkgtsevpon pelqahagkvfklvyeaa iqlo
HBB_HUMAN	LRGTFATLSELHCBKLHVDPENFRLLGNVLVCVLAHHFGKEFTPPVQAAYQKVVAGVANALAHKYH
HBB_HORSE	LRGTFAALSELHCDKLHVDPENFRLLGNVLVVVLARHFGKDFTPELQASYQKVVAGVANALAHKYH
HBA_HUMAN	MPNALSALSDLHAHKLRVDPVNFKLLSHCLLVTLAAHLPAEFTPAVHASLDKFLASVSTVLTSKYR
HBA HORSE	LPGALSNLSDLHAHKLRVDPVNFKLLSHCLLSTLAVHLPNDFTPAVHASLDKFLSSVSTVLTSKYR
MYG PHYCA	HEAELKPLAQSHATKHKIFIKYLEFISEAIIHVLHSRHPGDFGADAQQAMNKALELFRKDIAAKYKELGYQG
GLB5 PETMA	TEKMSMKLRDLSGKHARSFQVDPQYFKVLAAVIADTVAAGDAGFEKLMSMICILLESAY
LGB2 LUPLU	TGVVVTDATLKNLGSVHV\$KG-V4DAHFPVVKEAILKTIKEVVGAKUSEELN\$AUTIAYDELAIVIKEMNDAA
A	

Figure 9 : Example alignment of a set of 7 hemoglobin domain sequences

The alignment shows the 7 helical structure (PDB:1a00) and the conserved residues forming the heme pocket of the beta subunit (green triangles). The symbols below the alignment indicate conserved positions: \* = fully conserved identical residue, : = fully conserved 'similar' residue, . = partially conserved 'similar' residue.

Sequence alignments can be further divided into global alignments that align the complete sequences and local alignments that identify only the most similar segments or sequence patterns (motifs). In local alignments, the conserved motifs are identified and the rest of the sequences are included for information only. Thus, only a subset of the residues is actually aligned. In global alignments, all the residues in both sequences participate in the alignment.

In order to allow the maximum integration of biological information in the context of the complete protein family, a multiple alignment of the full length of the sequences is essential. Global Multiple Alignments of Complete Sequences (MACS) provide an ideal basis for more in-depth analyses of protein family relationships. By placing the sequence in the context of the overall family, the MACS permit not only a horizontal analysis of the sequence over its entire length, but also a vertical view of the evolution of the protein. The MACS thus represents a powerful integrative tool that addresses a variety of biological problems, ranging

from key functional residue detection to the evolution of a protein family. The MACS now plays a fundamental role in most areas of modern molecular biology, from shaping our basic conceptions of life and its evolutionary processes, to providing the foundation for the new biotechnology industry.

### 5.4. Multiple alignment applications

### 5.4.1. Phylogenetic studies

One of the earliest applications of multiple sequence alignments was in phylogenetic studies. Phylogenetics is the science of estimating the evolutionary past, in the case of molecular phylogeny, based on the comparison of DNA or protein sequences. For example, the accepted universal tree of life, in which the living world is divided into three domains (bacteria, archaea, and eucarya), was constructed from comparative analyses of ribosomal RNA sequences (Figure 10).



Figure 10 : Alternative hypotheses for the rooting of the tree of life In b), i indicates informational proteins and o indicates operational proteins.

According to this rRNA-based tree, billions of years ago a universal common prokaryotic-like ancestor gave rise to the two microbial branches, the archaea and bacteria (collectively called prokarya) and later, the archaea gave rise to the eukarya [165] (Figure 10a). More recently, analyses based on whole-genome comparisons have suggested that the eukaryotic lineage arose from metabolic symbiosis between eubacteria and methanogenic archaea [166] (Figure 10b). In this case, early eukaryotes would be a chimera of eubacterial and archaeal genes, in which the operational genes were primarily from the eubacteria, and the informational genes from the archaea. But some important eukaryotic genes have no

obvious predecessors in either the archaeal or the bacterial lines, and an alternative has been suggested where prokaryotes would have evolved by simplification of an ancestral eukaryotic-like genome [167, 168] (Figure 10c). In a comprehensive study of ribosomal genes in complete genomes from 66 different species, the archaeal ribosome appeared to be a small-scale model of the eukaryotic one in terms of protein composition [169], which would support the eukaryotic-rooting tree.

The methods for calculating phylogenetic trees fall into two general categories [170]. These are distance-matrix methods, also known as clustering or algorithmic methods (e.g. UPGMA or neighbour-joining), and discrete data methods, also known as tree searching methods (e.g. parsimony, maximum likelihood, Bayesian methods). All of these methods use distance measures based on the multiple sequence alignment and the strategy used to construct the alignment can have a large influence on the resulting phylogeny [171].

#### 5.4.2. Comparative genomics

Of course, in the current era of complete genome sequences, it is now possible to perform comparative multiple sequence analysis at the genome level [172]. As genomes evolve, large-scale evolutionary processes, such as recombination, deletion or horizontal transfer, cause frequent genome rearrangements [173]. Comparative analyses of complete genomes present a comprehensive view of the level of conservation of gene order, or synteny, between different genomes, and thus provide a measure of organism relatedness at the genome scale [174-176]. Examples of such analyses include comparisons among enteric bacteria [177] and between mouse and human [178]. Comparative genomics is thus an attempt to take advantage of the information provided by the signatures of selection to understand the function and evolutionary processes that act on genomes.

But comparative genomics can also take a medium-resolution view. By identifying all the known genes from one genome and finding their matching genes, if they exist, in another genome, we can determine which genes have been conserved between species and which are unique. The DNA sequences encoding the proteins and RNA responsible for the functions shared between distantly related organisms, as well as the DNA sequences for controlling the expression of such genes, should be preserved in their genome sequences. Conversely, sequences that encode proteins or RNAs responsible for differences between species will

themselves be divergent. For example, a comparison of the genomes of yeast, worms and flies revealed that these eukaryotes encode many of the same proteins, but different gene families are expanded in each genome [179]. A similar observation was made in a comparison of sixteen complete archaeal genomes, where comparative genomics revealed a core of 313 genes that are represented in all sequenced archaeal genomes, plus a variable 'shell' that is prone to lineage-specific gene loss and horizontal gene exchange [180].

A number of software tools have been developed for use in comparative genomics, in order to explore the similarities and differences between genomes at different levels. Because of the volume and nature of the data involved, almost all the visualization tools in this field use a web interface to access large databases of pre-computed sequence comparisons and annotations, e.g. Vista [181], Ensembl [182], UCSC [183]. For example, Figure 11 shows an 8 Mb region of the human chromosome 12, together with homologous regions of other vertebrate genomes, displayed using the UCSC genome browser. This particular region was identified by genome-wide SNP-based mapping in families with mutations involved in Bardet-Biedl Syndrome (BBS), a genetically heterogeneous ciliopathy [184].

Genomes	Blat	Tables	Gene Sorter	PCR	DNA	Convert	Ensembl	NCBI	PDF/P
	mo	ve <u>««</u> « pontion/search	Genome Browse ( ) ) >>   >>>   zoo chr12:70.747.326-79.738.32	r on Hu min 15x	man May 2 3x 10x base p dear nite 1	2004 Ass zoom out	embly 1.5x 3x 10x configure		
(The second seco	r12 (a21.1-a2	1.21)				191 <b>1</b> 923/22			115
STO Markers			III III II IIIIII III I	Genetic (b)	P) and Radiation P I I I II II III III P Locationa				
Kindum Genera			UCSC KNOUN Genes	(.Are. 10) 840	sea on Unifront, Re- Bille HD II effora Genes	rbes, and Gerdan	te atres		3 14
tives	1-4-0141		KOK2 KOK2 HILLINGE B HILLINGE B HILLINGE B G. 1791	HAPTLI ON	and the and a second			Print Bel	LINUM (
10.370			HARCH CHARMONE PLAN	Dog/Onick/Put	PU/2F ISB INJECT AL	presents & Const	nos term	يوند بيد ه	
Conservation		<b>I</b> 1 11			1		I.		
Of the stor source Pat		ins à lais ann Chailten Iair Ins Miles annais ins a' Iair Ins Miles 19 a' Thing ann							
fugu zebraf ish	1 101 1 1 101 101 1	i de madalas	er bei eine beite einer	d Har Hac BOT		(1.4 m)			the other
RecentRacker		111111111		Repeating Ele	ebents by Repeatra	iker			

#### Figure 11 : UCSC genome browser display

The display shows a 12Mb region of homozygosity that segregated with the disease phenotype in different sibships in families with Bardet-Biedl Syndrome (BBS) mutations. The region contains 23 known genes, including the BBS10 gene, a major locus for BBS. Syntenic regions from chimp, dog, mouse and other organisms are shown at the bottom of the display.

### 5.4.3. Gene prediction and validation

One important aspect in biotechnology is gene discovery and target validation for drug discovery. At the time of writing, over 1000 genomes (from bacteria, archaea and eukaryota, as well as many viruses and organelles) [40] are either complete or being determined, but biological interpretation, i.e. annotation, is not keeping pace with this avalanche of raw sequence data. There is still a real need for accurate and fast tools to analyze these sequences and, especially, to find genes and determine their functions. Unfortunately, finding genes in a genomic sequence is far from being a trivial problem. It has been estimated that 44% of the protein sequences predicted from eukaryotic genomes and 31% of the HTC (High-throughput cDNA) sequences contain suspicious regions [72].

The most widely used approach consists of employing heterogeneous information from different methods, including the detection of a bias in codon usage between coding and noncoding regions and ab initio prediction of functional sites in the DNA sequence, such as splice sites, promoters, or start and stop codons. Most current methods of detection of a signal that may represent the presence of a functional site use position-weight matrices (PWM), consensus sequences or HMM's. The reliability and accuracy of these methods depends critically on the quality of the underlying multiple alignments [8]. For prokaryotic genomes, these combined methods are highly successful, identifying over 95% of the genes (e.g. [185]), although the exact determination of the start site location remains more problematic because of the absence of relatively strong sequence patterns. The process of predicting genes in higher eukaryotic genomes is complicated by several factors, including complex gene organization, the presence of large numbers of introns and repetitive elements, and the sheer size of the genomic sequence [186]. It has been shown that comparison of the ab initio predicted exons with protein, EST or cDNA databases can improve the sensitivity and specificity of the overall prediction. For example, in the re-annotation of the Mycoplasma

pneumoniae genome [187], sequence alignments were used in the prediction of N/C-terminal extensions to the original protein reading frame. This approach has also been implemented in a web server, vALId, developed in our group for automatic protein quality control [72].



Figure 12 : vALId display of a multiple alignment of plant alcohol dehydrogenases

a) Multiple alignment display showing reliable sequence segments in green and potential errors in orange. Grey shading represents regions that have been validated by vALId. b) Validation of the predicted error in Q41767\_MAIZE by comparison of a chimeric sequence with the original genome sequence.

Taking advantage of high quality MACS, vALId first warns about the presence of suspicious insertions/deletions (indels) and divergent segments, and second, proposes corrections based on transcripts and genome contigs. For example, figure 5.5 shows the vALId analysis of a multiple alignment of plant alcohol dehydrogenases, highlighting a very divergent region in the N-terminal region of the sequence Q41767\_MAIZE. Divergent regions are validated by constructing a chimeric sequence, where the suspicious region in the predicted sequence is replaced by the corresponding segment from the closest neighbour in the MACS. A TBlastN search with the chimeric sequence (Figure 12) identified an exon encoding residues that matched the conserved positions in the MACS.

### 5.4.4. Protein function characterization

In most genome annotation projects, the standard strategy to determine the function of a novel protein is to search the sequence databases for homologues and to propagate the structural/functional annotation from the known to the unknown protein. Recent developments in database search methods have exploited multiple sequence alignments to detect more and more distant homologues e.g. [21, 188, 189]. However, most automatic genome projects only use information from the top best hits in the database search, as sequence hits with higher expect values are considered unreliable. This has lead to a certain number of errors in genome annotations. Two types of error have already been identified: those of under- and over-prediction. Under-prediction implies that functional information is not transferred because the chain of propagation is broken, for example, because the top-scoring hits in the database search are all uncharacterised. Over-prediction is perhaps more serious because it introduces incorrect annotations into the sequence databases. Subsequent searches against these databases then cause the errors to propagate to future functional assignments.



Chapter 5 : Multiple Alignment of Protein Sequences : A case study for Expert Systems in Bioinformatics



Figure 13: Multiple alignment of the BBS10 protein and homologs found in in-depth database searches



Another approach is to look for similarities to known domains in pre-compiled databases, such as Interpro [191]. These databases contain representations such as profiles or HMM's of individual protein domains based on multiple alignments of known sequences. Genome annotation systems such as Magpie [192], Imagene [193], GeneQuiz [194], Alfresco [195] now use multiple alignments to reliably incorporate information from more distant homologues and provide a more detailed description of protein function. As an illustration, shows a MACS of the BBS10 protein (Figure 13). The BBS10 sequence shows some similarity (approx. 11% residue identity) to several chaperonin-like proteins which are found

only in vertebrates, although the MACS revealed three BBS10-specific insertions. A 3D homology model based on the crystal structure of the chaperonin from Thermococcus (PDB:1q2vA) showed that the 3 insertions are spatially close, suggesting potential interactions and the existence of a new functional domain.

#### 5.4.5. Protein 2D/3D structure prediction

Multiple alignments play an important role in a number of aspects of the characterisation of the 3-dimensional structure of a protein. The most accurate in silico method for determining the structure of an unknown protein is homology structure modeling. Sequence similarity between proteins usually indicates a structural resemblance, and accurate sequence alignments provide a practical approach for structure modeling, when a 3D structural prototype is available. For models based on distant evolutionary relationships, it has been shown that multiple sequence alignments often improve the accuracy of the structural prediction [196]. Multiple sequence alignments are also used to significantly increase the accuracy of ab initio prediction methods for both 2D (e.g. [197]) and 3D [198] structures, by taking into account the overall consistency of putative features. Similarly, multiple alignments are also used to improve the reliability of other predictions, such as transmembrane helices [199]. More detailed structural analyses also exploit the information in multiple alignments. For example, binding surfaces common to protein families were defined on the basis of sequence conservation patterns and knowledge of the shared fold [200].

More recently, multiple sequence alignments have been used to identify communication pathways through protein folds [201]. Figure 14 shows part of a multiple alignment of nuclear receptor (NR) proteins used in this study. Nuclear receptors (NRs) are ligand-dependent transcription factors that control a large number of physiological events through the regulation of gene transcription. Two classes of NRs were identified on the basis of the distribution of differentially conserved residues in the multiple sequence alignment. Differentially conserved residues are defined as those residues that are conserved in one sub-family and that are strictly absent in all the other sequences in the alignment. The two classes of NRs were found to correspond to experimentally verified homodimers and heterodimers. Furthermore, site directed mutagenesis revealed that the differentially conserved residues contribute class-

specific communication pathways of salt bridges, confirming the functional importance of these residues for the dimerization process and/or transcriptional activity.



Figure 14 : Multiple sequence alignment of NR ligand binding domains and class-specific features

The differentially conserved residues are highlighted in blue and green for class I and II, respectively. Conserved residues are indicated as follows: 100%, white against black; >80%, white against grey; >60%, black against grey. NR LBD secondary structure elements are indicated. b) Secondary structure diagram showing NR class-specific features. Conserved but not strictly class-specific residues are in black. Arrows indicate the salt bridges in the 3D structures. c) Views of the class-specific residues including the salt bridges forming the class I (blue) and class II (green) communication pathway [201].

### 5.4.6. RNA structure and function

While proteins have been the traditional candidates for detailed structural and functional analyses, RNA secondary and tertiary structure studies remain crucial to the understanding of

complex biological systems. Structure and structural transitions are important in many areas, such as post-transcriptional regulation of gene expression, intermolecular interaction and dimerization, splice site recognition and ribosomal frame-shifting. The function of an RNA molecule depends mostly on its tertiary structure and this structure is generally more conserved than the primary sequence. The determination of RNA 3D structure is a limiting step in the study of RNA structure-function relationships because it is very difficult to crystallize and/or get nuclear magnetic resonance spectrum data for large RNA molecules. Currently, a reliable prediction of RNA secondary and tertiary structure from its primary sequence is mainly derived from multiple alignments, searching among members of a family for compensatory base changes that would maintain base-pairedness in equivalent regions. For example, the Sequence to Structure (S2S) tool [202] proposes a framework in which a user can display, manipulate and interconnect RNA multiple sequence alignments, secondary and tertiary structures (Figure 15).



Figure 15: S2S display of a multiple alignment of the RNA element conserved in the SARS virus genome

Multiple sequence alignment, secondary and tertiary structure. Inside the multiple alignment, the bracket notation is such that the regular parentheses '('and')' denote the helical Watson–Crick pairs and the '<' and '>' characters specify non-Watson–Crick base-pairs typical of RNA motifs.

These methods have been demonstrated by successful predictions of RNA structures for tRNAs, 5S and 16S rRNAs, RNase P RNAs, small nuclear RNAs (snRNAs) and other RNAs, such as group I introns.

The phylogenetic comparative methods are often supported by complementary, theoretical structure calculations. The most widely used methods are derived from dynamic programming algorithms, such as MFOLD [203] which predicts on average about 70% of known base-pairs. However, the search for the equilibrium structure by optimization of the global free energy is often insufficient. The biologically functional state of a given molecule may not be the optimal state and moreover, a structured RNA molecule is not a static object. A molecule may pass through a variety of active and inactive states due to the kinetics of folding, to the simultaneity of folding with transcription, or to interactions with extramolecular factors. To address these problems, integrated systems have been developed that thermodynamic calculations combine traditional with experimental data, e.g. STRUCTURELAB [204]. Such systems permit the use of a broad array of approaches for the analysis of the structure of RNA and provide the capability of analysing the data set from a number of different perspectives.

### 5.4.7. Interaction networks

In the post-genomic view of cellular function, each biological entity is seen in the context of a complex network of interactions. New and powerful experimental techniques, such as the yeast two-hybrid system or tandem-affinity purification and mass spectrometry, are used to determine protein-protein interactions systematically. In parallel with these developments, a number of computational techniques have been designed for predicting protein interactions. The performance of the Rosetta method, which relies on the observation that some interacting proteins have homologues in another organism fused into a single protein chain, has recently been improved using multiple sequence alignment information and global measures of hydrophobic core formation [205]. A measure of the similarity between phylogenetic trees of protein families has also been used to predict pairs of interacting proteins [206]. This method was adapted to consider the multi-domain nature of proteins by breaking the sequence into a set of segments of predetermined size and constructing a separate profile for each segment [207]. Another approach involves quantifying the degree of

co-variation between residues from pairs of interacting proteins (correlated mutations), known as the "in silico two-hybrid" method. For certain proteins that are known to interact, correlated mutations have been demonstrated to be able to select the correct structural arrangement of two proteins based on the accumulation of signals in the proximity of interacting surfaces [208]. This relationship between correlated residues and interacting surfaces has been extended to the prediction of interacting protein pairs based on the differential accumulation of correlated mutations between the interacting partners (interprotein correlated mutations) and within the individual proteins (intraprotein correlated mutations) [209].

### 5.4.8. Genetics

A considerable effort is now underway to relate human phenotypes to variation at the DNA level. Most human genetic variation is represented by single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) and many of them are believed to cause phenotypic differences between individuals [210]. One of the main goals of SNP research is therefore to understand the genetics of human phenotype variation and especially the genetic basis of complex diseases, thus providing a basis for assessing susceptibility to diseases and designing individual therapy. Whereas a large number of SNPs may be functionally neutral, others may have deleterious effects on the regulation or the functional activity of specific gene products. Non-synonymous single-nucleotide polymorphisms (nsSNPs) that lead to an amino acid change in the protein product are of particular interest because they account for nearly half of the known genetic variations related to human inherited disease [211]. With more and more data available, it has become imperative to predict the phenotype of a nsSNP in silico. Computational tools are therefore being developed, which use structural information or evolutionary information from multiple sequence alignments to predict a nsSNP's phenotypic effect and to identify disease-associated nsSNPs, e.g. [212].

### 5.4.9. Drug discovery, design

The structural and functional analyses described above provide an opportunity to identify the proteins associated with a particular disease that are therefore potential drug targets. Rational drug design strategies can then be directed to accelerate and optimize the drug discovery process using experimental and virtual (computer-aided drug discovery)

methods. Recent advances in the computational analyses of enzyme structures and functions have improved the strategies used to modify enzyme specificities and mechanisms by sitedirected mutagenesis, and to engineer biocatalysts through molecular reassembly.

For example, vitamin D analogs have been proposed for the treatment of severe rickets caused by mutations in the vitamin D receptor (VDR) gene [213]. The known mutations in the coding regions of the human VDR gene can be divided into two classes, representing two different phenotypes. Mutations in the VDR DNA-binding domain (DBD) prevent the receptor from activating gene transcription, although vitamin D binding is normal. Patients with this DNA binding-defective phenotype do not respond to vitamin D treatment. In contrast, some patients with mutations in the ligand binding domain (LBD) that cause reduced or complete hormone insensitivity have been partially responsive to high doses of calcium and vitamin D, although this often necessitates long term intravenous infusion therapy. For these patients, an alternative treatment using vitamin D analogs was proposed. Knowledge of the 3D structure of the hormone-occupied VDR LBD [214] and the nature of the amino acid residues that contribute to the functional surface of the receptor allowed the selection of 3 candidate VDR mutations with the potential to interact with the receptor at amino acid contact points that differ from those utilized by the natural ligand, thus restoring the function of mutant VDRs [213]. This example clearly illustrates the importance of polymorphism data that, combined with structural and evolutionary information, can form the basis for biochemical and cellular studies which may eventually lead to new drug therapies.

### Chapter 6

### 6. Multiple sequence alignment algorithms

In the face of the growing number of alignment applications, a vast array of diverse algorithms has been developed in an attempt to construct reliable, high-quality multiple alignments within a reasonable time limit that will allow high-throughput processing of large sequence sets. The first formal algorithm for multiple sequence alignment [215] was a direct extension of the dynamic programming algorithm for the alignment of two sequences developed by Needleman and Wunsch [216]. However, the optimal multiple alignment of more than a few sequences (more than 10) remains impractical due to the intensive computer resources required, despite some space and time improvements [217]. Therefore, in order to multiply align larger sets of sequences, most programs in use today employ some kind of heuristic approach to reduce the problem to a reasonable size.

### 6.1. Multiple alignment construction

### 6.1.1 Progressive multiple alignment

Traditionally the most popular method has been the progressive alignment procedure [218], which exploits the fact that homologous sequences are evolutionarily related. A multiple sequence alignment is built up gradually using a series of pairwise alignments, following the branching order in a phylogenetic tree. An example using five immunoglobulin-like domains is shown in Figure 16.





Figure 16: The basic progressive alignment procedure

The algorithm is illustrated using a set of five immunoglobulin-like domains. The sequence names are from the Swissprot or PDB databases: 1HNF: human cell adhesion (CD2) protein, CD2\_HORSE: horse cell adhesion protein, CD2\_RAT: rat cell adhesion protein, MYPS\_HUMAN: human myosin-binding protein, 1WIT: nematode twitchin muscle protein. The secondary structure elements of the immunoglobulin-like domains from the human CD2 (1HNF) and the nematode twitchin (1WIT) proteins are shown above and below the alignment (right arrow = beta sheet, coil = alpha helix).

The first step involves aligning all possible pairs of sequences in order to determine the distances between them. A guide tree is then created and is used to determine the order of the multiple alignment. The two closest sequences are aligned first and then larger and larger sets of sequences are merged, until all the sequences are included in the multiple alignment. In the example, the human and horse CD2 sequences are aligned first. These two sequences are then aligned with the rat CD2 sequence. Finally, the myosin-binding protein sequence is aligned

with the twitchin sequence, before being merged with the alignment of the three CD2 sequences. This procedure works well when the sequences to be aligned are of different degrees of divergence. Pairwise alignment of closely related sequences can be performed very accurately. By the time the more distantly related sequences are aligned, important information about the variability at each position is available from those sequences already aligned. A number of different alignment programs based on this method exist, using either a global alignment method to construct an alignment of the complete sequences, or a local algorithm to align only the most conserved subsegments of the sequences (Figure 17). For example, Multalign [219], Multal [220], Pileup (Wisconsin Package, Genetics Computer Group, Madison, WI), ClustalW/X [190, 221] are all based on the global Needleman-Wunsch algorithm. The main difference between these programs lies in the algorithm used to determine the final order of alignment. For example, Multal uses a sequential branching algorithm to identify the two closest sequences first and subsequently align the next closest sequence to those already aligned. Multalign and Pileup use a simple bottom-up data clustering method, known as the Unweighted Pair Grouping Method with Arithmetic means (UPGMA) [222], to construct a phylogenetic tree that is then used to guide the progressive alignment step. ClustalW/X uses another phylogenetic tree construction method, called neighbour-joining (NJ) [223]. Although the NJ method is less efficient than the UPGMA, it has been extensively tested and usually finds a tree that is quite close to the optimal tree. In contrast to the global alignment methods, the Pima program [224] uses the Smith-Waterman algorithm to find a local multiple alignment.



Figure 17 : Overview of different progressive alignment algorithms SB=sequential branching, ML=maximum likelihood, NJ=neighbour joining, UPGMA=Unweighted Pair Grouping Method with Arithmetic mean.

Since then, the sensitivity of the progressive multiple sequence alignment method has been somewhat improved with the introduction of several important enhancements to the basic method. For example, Treealign [225] extends the progressive alignment process by adding a parsimony step: an initial alignment is constructed and used to build a parsimony tree which in turn is used to direct the final alignment algorithm. ClustalX [190] reduces the problem of the over-representation of certain sequences by incorporating a sequence weighting scheme that downweights near-duplicate sequences and upweights the most divergent ones. In addition, position-specific gap penalties encourage the alignment of new gaps on existing gaps introduced earlier in the multiple alignments. Most of the alignment programs mentioned above use one residue scoring matrix and two gap penalties (one for opening a new gap and one for extending an existing gap). When identities dominate an alignment, almost any set of parameters will find approximately the correct solution. With very divergent sequences, however, the scores given to non-identical residues will become critically important. Also, the exact values of the gap penalties become important for success.

Thus, the choice of alignment parameters remains a decisive factor affecting the quality of the final alignment.

### 6.1.2 Iterative strategies

The next generation of multiple alignment algorithms used iterative strategies to refine and improve the initial alignment. The PSI-Blast program builds multiple alignments by aligning the homologous segments detected by a Blast database search to the query sequence. Hidden Markov Models (HMM's) have been used in a number of programs HMMT [226] or SAM [188] to build multiple alignments and have been employed notably to create large reference databases of sequence alignments such as Pfam and ProSite. The flexibility and efficiency of stochastic techniques such as Gibbs Sampling [227] and Genetic Algorithms [228] have also been exploited in the search for more accurate alignments. Iteration techniques have also been used to refine an initial multiple alignment built using the traditional progressive alignment algorithm in PRRP [229]. An alternative to the global alignment approach is the 'segment-to-segment' alignment method used in Dialign [230]. Segments consisting of locally conserved residue patterns or motifs, rather than individual residues, are detected and then combined to construct a local multiple alignment of only the most conserved regions of the sequences.

### 6.1.3 Co-operative strategies

The complexity of the multiple alignment problem has lead to the combination of different alignment algorithms and the incorporation of biological information other than the sequence itself. A comparison of a number of local and global protein alignment methods based on the BAliBASE benchmark [231] showed that no single algorithm was capable of constructing accurate alignments for all test cases. A similar observation was made in another study of RNA alignment programs [232], where algorithms incorporating structural information outperformed pure sequence-based methods for divergent sequences. Therefore, recent developments in multiple alignment methods have tended towards an integrated system bringing together knowledge-based or text-mining systems and prediction methods with their inherent unreliability. For example, methods were introduced that combined both global and local information in a single alignment program, such as DbClustal [233], T-Coffee [234], MAFFT [235], Muscle [236] or Probcons [237]. Other authors introduced different kinds of information in the sequence alignment, such as or 3D structure [238] or domain organisation

(REFINER). A number of methods were also developed to address specific problems, such as the accurate alignment of closely related sequences (PRANK) or the alignment of sequences with different domain organisations (POA).

### 6.2. Alignment parameters

Most of the alignment methods mentioned above try to optimize a score for the multiple alignment based on scores for matching similar residues, together with penalties for introducing indels into the sequences.

### 6.2.1 Scoring matrices

Most alignment programs make comparisons between pairs of bases or amino acids by looking up a value in a scoring matrix. The matrix contains a score for the match quality of every possible pair of residues (Figure 18).

_	<b>A</b> ]	RN	N D	С	Q	Е	G	Н	I	L	K	Μ	F	Р	S	Т	W	Y	V	В	Z	X	
A	2 -	2 0	0	-2	0	0	1	-1	-1	-2	-1	-1	-3	1	1	1	-6	-3	0	0	0	0	
K	-2		2 -1	-4	1	-1	- 3	2	-2	-3	3	2	-4	0	0	-1	4	-4	- 2	-1	1	-1	
D	Ň.	1 2		-4	2	3	ĩ	1	-2	-3	0	-2	-5	-1	0	0	-4	-2	-2	- 2	3	1	
č	-2 -	4 -4	-5	12	-5	-5	-3	-3	-2	-6	-5	-5	-4	-3	ŏ	-2	-8	-7	-2	-4	-5	-3	
õ	õ	i i	2	-5	4	2	-1	3	-2	-2	ĩ	-1	-5	ŏ	-ĭ	-ĩ	- 5	-4	-2	i	ž	-1	
Ē	0 -	1 1	3	-5	2	4	0	1	-2	-3	0	-2	-5	- 1	0	0	-7	-4	-2	3	3	-1	
G	1 -	3 (	) 1	-3	- 1	0	5	-2	-3	-4	-2	-3	-5	0	1	0	-7	-5	-1	0	0	-1	
H.	-1	2 2	21	-3	3	1	-2	6	-2	-2	0	-2	-2	0	-1	-1	-3	0	-2	1	2	-1	
1 T	-1 -	$\frac{2}{2} - \frac{2}{2}$	-2	-2	-2	-2	- 3	-2	2	2	-2	2	1	-2	-1	0	- 2	-1	4	-2	-2	-1	
L L	-2 -	2 - 3	2 -4	-0	- 2	- 5	-4	-2	2	1	- 5	4	ź	- 5	- 5	-ź	- 2	-1	ź	- 5	- 5	-1	
M	-1	0 -2	2 -3	-5	-1	-2	-3	-2	-ź	- 3	ő	6	-0	-2	-2	-1	-4	-2	-ź	-2	-2	-1	
F	-3 -	4 -3	-6	-4	- ŝ	-5	- 5	-2	ī	2	- 5	õ	9	-5	-3	-3	ó	7	-1	-4	-5	-2	
P	1 i	Ó Č	) -ľ	-3	Õ	-1	Õ	ō	-2	-3	- 1	-2	-5	6	ĩ	Ő	-6	-5	-Î	- Í	Õ	-ī	
S	1	0 1	0	0	- 1	0	1	-1	-1	-3	0	-2	-3	1	2	1	-2	-3	-1	0	0	0	
T.	1 -	1 (	) Q	-2	-1	Q	Q	-1	õ	-2	0	-1	-3	ò	1	3	-5	-3	ò	õ	-1	0	
w	-0	2 - 4	+ -7	-8	- 2	-7	- /	-3	-5	-2	- 3	-4	2	- 6	-2	-2	17	10	-0	- 2	-0	-4	
1 V	-3-	5 - 2	-4	2	-4	-4	- 5	2	-1	-1	-4	- 2	- 1	- 5	- 5	- 3	6	2	- 2	- 2	-4	-2	
Ř	0	ĩ 3	5 3	-4	-1	-2	-1	-1	-2	-3	-1	-2	-4	-t	-1	ő	-5	-3	-2	- 2	-2	-1	
ž	ŏ	ò î	3	-5	3	3	ŏ	2	-2	-3	ò	-2	-5	0	ŏ	-1	-6	-4	-2	2	3	-1	
X	Ó-	i d	) -1	-3	-1	-1	- 1	- 1	-1	-1	- 1	-1	-2	-1	Ő	Ô	-4	-2	-ī	-1	-1	-1	

#### Figure 18 : PAM-250 matrix. Substitution scores for amino acids.

The simplest way to score an alignment is to count the number of identical residues that are aligned. When the sequences to be aligned are closely related, this will usually find approximately the correct solution. For more divergent sequences sharing less than 25-30 percent identity, however, the scores given to non-identical residues becomes critically important. More sophisticated scoring schemes exist for both DNA and protein sequences and generally take the form of a matrix defining the score for aligning each pair of residues. For alignments of nucleotide sequences, the simplest scoring matrix would assign the same score

to a match of the four classes of bases, ACGT, and 0 for any mismatch. However, transitions (substitution of A-G or C-T) happen much more frequently than transversions (substitution of A-T or G-C) and it is often desirable to score these substitutions differently. More complex matrices also exist in which matches between ambiguous nucleotides are given values whenever there is any overlap in the sets of nucleotides represented by the two symbols being compared. For protein sequence comparisons, scoring matrices generally take into account the biochemical similarities between residues and/or the relative frequencies with which each amino acid is substituted by another. The most widely used scoring matrices are known as the PAM (point accepted mutation) matrices [239]. The original PAM1 matrix was constructed based on the mutations observed in a large number of alignments of closely related sequences. A series of matrices was then extrapolated from the PAM1. The matrices range from strict ones, useful for comparing very closely related sequences to very 'soft' ones that are used to compare very divergent sequences. For example, the PAM250 matrix corresponds to an evolutionary distance of 250%, or approximately 80% residue divergence. Other matrices have been derived directly from either sequence-based or structure-based alignments. For example, the Blosum matrices are based on the observed residue substitutions in aligned sequence segments from the Blocks database. The proteins in the database are clustered at different percent identities to produce a series of matrices. For example, the Blosum-62 matrix is based on alignment blocks in which all the sequences share at least 62% residue identity. Other more specialized matrices have been developed e.g. for specific secondary structure elements [240] or for the comparison of particular types of proteins such as transmembrane proteins [241].

### 6.2.2 Gap schemes

As well as assigning scores for residue matches and mismatches, most alignment scoring schemes in use today calculate a cost for the insertion of gaps in the sequences. One of the first gap scoring schemes for the alignment of two sequences charged a fixed penalty for each residue in either sequence aligned with a gap in the other. Under this system, the cost of a gap is proportional to its length. Alignment algorithms implementing such lengthproportional gap penalties are efficient, however the resulting alignments often contain a large number of short indels that are not biologically meaningful. To address this problem, linear or 'affine' gap costs are used that define a gap insertion or 'gap opening' penalty in addition to the length-dependent or 'gap extension' penalty. Thus, a smaller number of long gaps is

favoured over many short ones. Fortunately, algorithms using affine gap costs are only slightly more complex than those using length-proportional gap penalties, requiring only a constant factor more space and time. Again, more complex schemes have been developed, such as 'concave' gap costs [242] or position-specific gap penalties [243]. Most of these are attempts to mimic the biological processes or constraints that are thought to regulate the evolution of DNA or protein sequences.

### 6.2.3 Alignment statistics

An important aspect of sequence alignment is to establish how meaningful a given alignment is. It is always possible to construct an alignment between a set of sequences, even if they are unrelated. The problem is to determine the level of similarity required to infer that the sequences are homologous, i.e. that they descend from a common ancestor. A simple ruleof-thumb for protein sequences states that if two sequences share more than 25% identity over more than 100 residues, then the two sequences can be assumed to be homologous. However, many proteins sharing less than 25% residue identity, said to be in the 'twilight zone' [244], do still have very similar structures. The measure of the percent identity or similarity of the sequences is generally not sensitive enough to distinguish between alignments of related and unrelated sequences. Much work has been done on the significance of both ungapped and gapped pairwise local alignments [245, 246], although the statistics of global alignments or alignments of more than two sequences are far less well understood. The aim of the statistical analysis is to estimate the probability of finding by 'chance' at least one alignment that scores as high as or greater than the given alignment. For ungapped local alignments, these probabilities or P-values may be derived analytically. For alignments with gaps, empirical estimates are used based on the scores obtained during a database search, or from randomly generated sequences. For database search programs, the significance of an alignment between the query sequence and a database sequence is often expressed in terms of Expect- or Evalues. The E-value specifies the number of matches with a given score that are expected to occur by chance in a search of a database. An Expect-value of zero, with a given score, would indicate that no matches with this score are expected purely by chance.

### 6.3. Multiple alignment quality

In the search for more accurate alignments, most state of the art methods now often use a combination of complementary techniques, such as local/global alignments or sequence/structure information. Although much progress has been achieved, the latest methods are not perfect and misalignments can still occur. If these misalignments are not detected, they will lead to further errors in the subsequent applications that are based on the multiple alignment. The assessment of the quality and significance of a multiple alignment has therefore become a critical task, particularly in high-throughput data processing systems, where a manual verification of the results is no longer possible.

A number of quality issues can be distinguished. First, given a set of sequences, how to evaluate the quality of a multiple alignment of those sequences. The most reliable is probably to compare the alignment to a reference alignment, e.g. 3D structural superposition. In the absence of a known reference, a score is calculated, known as an objective function that estimates how close the alignment is to the correct or optimal solution. Objective scoring functions are discussed in section 6.3.1. In general though, most multiple alignments contain regions that are well aligned and regions that contain errors. Section 6.3.2 describes methods that can distinguish reliable from unreliable regions. Even if the alignment is optimal, this does not mean that the sequences are actually homologous. Most multiple alignment methods available today will produce an alignment even if the sequences are unrelated. Finally, section 6.3.3 describes the most widely used benchmarks that are used to compare multiple alignment methods and evaluate the improvements obtained by the new methods.

### 6.3.1. Multiple alignment objective scoring functions

Given a particular set of sequences, an objective score is needed that describes the optimal or "biologically correct" multiple alignment. Sub-optimal or incorrect alignments would then score less than this maximal score. Such measures, also known as objective functions, are currently used to evaluate and compare multiple alignments from different sources and to detect low-quality alignments. They are also used in iterative alignment methods to improve the alignment by seeking to maximize the objective function.
#### Chapter 6 : Multiple sequence alignment algorithms

One of the first scoring systems was the Sum-of-Pairs score (Carrillo and Lipman, 1988). For each pair of sequences in the multiple alignment a score is calculated based on the percent identity or the similarity between the sequences. (Pairwise alignment scores are discussed in detail in Chapter 6). The score for the multiple alignment, S(m), is then taken to be the sum of all the pairwise scores:

$$S(m) = \sum_{i < j, j < N} s(i, j)$$

where s(i, j) is the score of the pairwise alignment between sequences i and j and N is the total number of sequences in the alignment.

Pairwise scores are also used in the COFFEE objective function [247], which reflects the level of consistency between a multiple sequence alignment and a library containing pairwise alignments of the same sequences. This method was shown to be a good estimation of the accuracy of the multiple alignment when high quality pairwise alignments, such as 3D structural superpositions, are available as reference. One problem with multiple alignment scores based on pairwise sequence comparisons is that they assume that substitution probabilities are uniform and time-invariant at all positions in the alignment. This is unrealistic as the variability may range from total invariance at some positions to complete variability at others, depending on the functional or structural constraints of the protein.

For this reason, more recent work has concentrated on column statistics. One approach uses an Information Content statistic, assuming that the most interesting alignments are those where the frequencies of the residues found in each column are significantly different from a predefined set of a priori residue probabilities [248]. The Information Content of a multiple alignment is defined as:

$$I(m) = \sum_{j=1}^{L} \sum_{i=1}^{A} f_{i,j} \ln \frac{f_{i,j}}{p_i}$$

where  $f_{i,j} = \frac{n_{i,j}}{N}$  is the frequency that letter *i* occurs at position *j* 

A is the total number of letters in the alphabet

L is the total number of positions in the alignment

- N is the total number of sequences in the alignment
  - $p_i$  is the *a priori* probability of letter i
- $n_{i,j}$  is the frequency that letter i occurs at position j

One disadvantage of this measure is that it considers only the frequencies of identical residues in each column and does not take into account similarities between residues. For this reason, another column-based measure, norMD, was introduced [249], based on the Mean Distance (MD) column scores implemented in ClustalX [190]. The MD scores are summed over the full-length of the alignment and the total score is then normalized to take into account the number, length and similarity of the sequences in the alignment, and the presence of gaps. The norMD score can be used to estimate the quality of the alignment even when the optimal alignment score is unknown. It was shown that most alignments scoring higher than the threshold score of 0.5 are correct, while alignments scoring less than 0.3 are generally of poor quality. Nevertheless, a twilight zone still exists for norMD scores between 0.3 and 0.5, where no distinction can be made between good and bad alignments.

## 6.3.2. Determination of reliable regions

The objective functions described above calculate a global score that estimates the overall quality of a multiple alignment. However, even when misalignments occur, it is not necessarily true that all of the alignment is incorrect. Useful information could still be extracted if the reliable regions in the alignment could be distinguished from the unreliable regions. The prediction of the reliability of specific alignment positions has therefore been an area of much interest. One of the first automatic methods for the analysis of position conservation was the AMAS program [250], which was based on a set-based description of amino acid properties. Since then, a large number of different methods have been proposed. For example, Al2Co [251] calculates a conservation index at each position in a multiple sequence alignment using weighted amino acid frequencies at each position. The DIVAA method [252] is based on a statistical measure of the diversity at a given position. The diversity measures the proportion of the 20 possible amino acids that are observed. If the position is completely conserved (i.e. only one amino acid is observed in all sequences analyzed), the diversity is 0.05 (1/20); if it is populated by equal proportions of all amino acids, the diversity is 1.0 (20/20). Diversity is inversely and non-linearly related to the measure of sequence information content described above, with a highly conserved position

#### Chapter 6 : Multiple sequence alignment algorithms

exhibiting relatively low diversity and high information content. For nucleic acid sequences, the ConFind program [253] identifies regions of conservation in multiple sequence alignments that can serve as diagnostic targets and is designed to work with a large number of highly mutable target sequences such as viral genomes.

An alternative approach has been implemented in the MUMSA program [254], based on the comparison of several alignments of the same sequences. The idea here is to search for regions which are identically aligned in many alignments, assuming that these are more reliable than regions differently aligned in many alignments. The method also results in a score for a given alignment. A high quality alignment in this case, is one that shares more aligned residues with other alignments. The choice of multiple alignment methods used as input is therefore crucial, in order to avoid a bias towards one particular algorithm. Ideally, different algorithms should be used, such as local and global methods, algorithms designed for transmembrane sequences, repeats, etc. In tests on BAliBASE, the MUMSA scores correlate higher with true alignment quality than the norMD scores. However, a major drawback of the MUMSA method is that several multiple alignments of the same set of sequences have to be constructed for the purpose of comparison, which is not always computationally feasible.

## 6.3.2. Benchmarking

In computer science, the quality of an algorithm is often estimated by comparing the results obtained with a pre-defined benchmark or 'gold standard'. Clearly, the tests need to be of high-quality. Errors in the benchmark will lead to biased or erroneous results. The tests in the benchmark need not be comprehensive, but must be representative of ones that the system is reasonably expected to handle in a natural (meaning not artificial) setting and the performance measure used must be pertinent to the comparisons being made. Enough tests need to be included in order to obtain statistical differences between programs tested. It should be possible to complete the task domain sample and to produce a good solution. A task that is too difficult for all or most tools yields little data to support comparisons. A task that is achievable, but not trivial, provides an opportunity for systems to show their capabilities and their shortcomings [255].

One of the first studies to compare the quality of different methods for protein sequence alignment was performed in 1994, when McClure et al. compared several progressive

#### Chapter 6 : Multiple sequence alignment algorithms

alignment methods, including both global and local algorithms [256]. They concluded that global methods generally performed better. However, the number of suitable test sets available at that time was somewhat limited and this was therefore not a comprehensive test.

## BAliBASE

**Commentaire [MSOffice14]** etails of the benchmarks might be better in materials and methods.

One of the first large scale benchmarks specifically designed for multiple sequence alignment was BAliBASE [231, 257]. The alignment test cases in BAliBASE are based on 3D structural superpositions that are manually refined to ensure the correct alignment of conserved residues. The alignments are organised into reference sets that are designed to represent real multiple alignment problems. The first version of BAliBASE consisted of 5 reference sets representing many of the problems encountered by multiple alignment methods at that time, from a small number of divergent sequences, to sequences with large N/Cterminal extensions or internal insertions (see figure 7.3). In version 2 [257], three new Reference sets were included, devoted to the particular problems posed by sequences with transmembrane regions, repeats and inverted domains. In each reference alignment, core blocks are defined that exclude the regions for which the 3D structure superpositions are unreliable, for example, the borders of secondary structure elements or in loop regions. In the latest version 3, a semi-automatic update protocol was introduced to facilitate the construction of larger alignments, particularly for reference sets 1-5. In addition, full-length sequences were provided for all test cases, which thus represent difficult cases for both global and local alignment programs.

In order to assess the accuracy of a multiple alignment program, the alignment produced by the program for each BAliBASE test case is compared to the reference alignment. Two scores are used to evaluate the alignment:

- the SP (sum of pairs) score calculates the percentage of pairwise residues aligned the same in both alignments
- the CS (column score) calculates the percentage of complete columns aligned the same. These scores are calculated in the core block regions only.

### OxBench

The OXBench benchmark suite from the Barton group [258], provides multiple alignments of protein domains that are built automatically using structure and sequence alignment methods. The automatic construction means that a large number of tests can be included, however the benchmark results will be biased towards sequence alignment programs using the same methodology as that used to construct the reference. The benchmark is divided into three data sets. The master set currently consists of 218 alignments of sequences of known 3D structure, with from 2 to 122 sequences in each alignment. The extended data set is constructed from the master set by including sequences of unknown structure. Finally, the full-length data set includes the full-length sequences for the domains in the master data set.

A number of different scores are included in the benchmark suite, in order to evaluate the accuracy of multiple alignment. The average number of correctly aligned positions is similar to the column score used in BAliBASE. This can be calculated over the full alignment or over Structurally Conserved Regions (SCR). The Position Shift Error measures the average magnitude of error, so that misalignments that cause a small shift between two sequences are penalized less than large shifts. Two other measures are also provided that are independent of the reference alignment, and are calculated from the structure superposition implied by the test alignment.

The OxBench suite was used to compare 8 different alignment programs, including many of those in the BAliBASE study, together with the AMPS program [219]. The MSA [217] and T-COFFEE [234] programs were also tested, although the tests were restricted to a smaller data set because these methods were unable to align the largest test sets due to prohibitive space and time requirements. The AMPS program was shown to perform as well or better than the other progressive alignment methods in most tests. The T-COFFEE method which incorporates both local and global pairwise alignment algorithms was shown to outperform the other methods on the smaller data set. Another important result was that the rigorous dynamic programming method used in the MSA program did not perform better than

the heuristic progressive methods in this study, supporting the hypothesis that the optimal sum-of-pairs score does not always correspond to the biologically correct alignment.

## PREFAB

The PREFAB [236] benchmark was constructed using a fully automatic protocol and currently contains 1932 multiple alignments. Pairs of sequences with known 3D structures were selected and aligned using two different 3D structure superposition methods. A multiple alignment was constructed for each pair of structures, by including 50 homologous sequences detected by sequence database searches.

The accuracy of an alignment program is estimated by comparing the alignment of the structure pair in the test multiple alignment with the reference superposition in each test case. Only positions that are aligned the same by the two different superposition methods are considered. The PREFAB benchmark was used to compare the MUSCLE program [236] with MAFFT [235], T-COFFEE and ClustalW and showed that the MUSCLE program performed significantly better than the other methods. The programs were also compared with the BAliBASE benchmark, where a similar ranking of programs was obtained although the difference between MUSCLE and T-COFFEE was not significant in this case.

## SABmark

SABmark [259] contains reference sets of sequences derived from the SCOP protein structure classification, divided into 2 sets, twilight zone (Blast E-value>=1) and superfamilies (residue identity<=50%). Pairs of sequences in each reference set are then aligned based on 3D structure superpositions. To evaluate the quality of a multiple alignment program, multiple alignments of each reference set are constructed. Pairwise alignments are then extracted from the multiple alignment and compared to the structure superpositions. Although the benchmark covers most of the known protein fold space, the major disadvantage of this benchmark is that only pairwise reference alignments are considered and no multiple alignment solution is provided.

In a comparison of 4 different alignment methods using SABmark, two different scores were used. The first, fD is similar to the SP score and is defined as the ratio of the number of correctly aligned residues divided by the length of the reference alignment, and may be thought of as a measure of sensitivity. The fM score measures the specificity and is defined as

#### Chapter 6 : Multiple sequence alignment algorithms

the ratio of the number of correctly aligned residues divided by the length of the test alignment. At the SCOP family level, T-COFFEE and ClustalW were shown to perform better, while Align-m [260] was more successful at constructing pairwise alignments at the SCOP superfamily level.

### Homstrad

HOMSTRAD [261] is a database of protein families, clustered on the basis of sequence and structural similarity. It was not specifically designed as a benchmark database, although it has been employed as such by a number of authors.

## Comparison of multiple alignment benchmarks

A comparison of a number of benchmarks for protein sequence alignment algorithms, including those described above, has been performed [262]. They concluded that, although SABmark boasts full coverage of the known fold space, there are only pairwise references for each group, so multiple alignment assessment becomes complicated depending on how the results are treated. The importance of core region annotation was also stressed by the authors. HOMSTRAD is often used as a benchmark though it lacks this annotation. Finally, they recommended that several benchmarks be used for program comparison, although this can become time-consuming and confusing. Oxbench, PREFAB and BAliBASE all contain difficult cases containing full-length sequences of low sequence identity. The authors noted that BAliBASE has the advantage that several distinct problem areas are explicitly addressed. It is smaller than the other test sets, but nevertheless has a large enough range of representative examples from the known fold-space to evaluate relative performance.

## 6.3.3. Comparison of multiple alignment programs

The objective evaluation of alignment quality and the introduction of large-scale alignment benchmarks have clearly had a positive effect on the development of multiple alignment methods. From their beginnings in 1975, until 1994 when McClure first compared different methods systematically, the main innovation was the introduction of the heuristic progressive method that allowed the multiple alignment of larger sets of sequences within a practical time limit.

#### Chapter 6 : Multiple sequence alignment algorithms

A comparison of some of the alignment methods described above [263], based on BAliBASE (version 1.0) showed that there was no single algorithm that was consistently better than the others. The study revealed a number of specificities in the different algorithms. For example, while most of the programs successfully aligned sequences sharing >40% residue identity, an important loss of accuracy was observed for more divergent sequences with <20% identity. Another important discovery was the fact that global alignment methods in general performed better for sets of sequences that were of similar length, although local algorithms were more successful at identifying the most conserved motifs in sequences containing large extensions and insertions. Of the local methods, Dialign [230] was the most successful. The iterative methods, such as PRRP [229] or SAGA [228] were generally more accurate than the traditional progressive methods, although at the expense of a large time penalty.

Soon after this initial comparison, various new methods were introduced that exploited novel algorithms, such as Iterative refinement, Hidden Markov Models or Genetic algorithms. These new approaches significantly improved alignment quality, as shown in the comparison of these methods by Thompson et al. [263]. Nevertheless, this study highlighted the fact that no single algorithm was capable of constructing high quality alignments for all test cases. In particular, global methods (e.g. ClustalW) were shown to perform well when the sequences were homologous over their entire lengths, while local methods (e.g. DiAlign) were shown to perform better when the sequence set contained large insertions or N/C terminal extensions.

As a consequence, the first methods were introduced that combined both global and local information in a single alignment program, such as DBClustal, T-Coffee, MAFFT, MUSCLE or ProbCons. Table 2 shows the scores obtained using most of these new methods for the different multiple alignment benchmarks described above.

	SABmark PREFAB		OxBench		BAliBASE (version 2)						
	25-50%	0-20%	20-40%	20-40%	40-60%	Ref1	Ref2	Ref3	Ref4	Refő	Time (hrs:mins)
DiAlign	41.9	34.1	78.1	34.9	66.7	70.9	35.9	34.4	76.2	84.3	2:53
ClustalW	41.2	41.1	78.3	38.7	66.2	77.3	56.8	46.0	52.2	63.8	1:07
T-Coffee	44.4	44.8	81.8	38.3	73.3	77.4	56.1	48.7	73.0	90.3	21:31
MAFFT	45.2	48.6	83.8	38.4	71.5	78.1	50.2	50.4	72.7	85.9	1:18
MUSCLE	50.6	46.0	83.0	39.9	72.1	80.8	56.3	56.4	60.9	90.2	1:05
ProbCons	48.4	49.0	85.2	39.7	74.4	82.6	61.3	61.3	72.3	91.9	5:32

#### Table 2 : Current state of the art for multiple sequence alignment methods

All scores shown are column scores. For PREFAB, the score is calculated in the superposable regions. For OxBench, the full alignments were used and the scores were calculated in structurally conserved regions only. For BAliBASE, the scores are for core block regions only.

The new combined strategies certainly improve alignment quality for a wide range of alignment problems. However, using the existing multiple alignment benchmarks it is becoming more and more difficult to make clear distinctions between the more recent methods. Therefore, the benchmarks must now evolve if they are to keep pace with the multiple alignment revolution. Hopefully, new benchmarks with larger, more complex test sets will stimulate the development of new alignment algorithms and vice versa.

Materials and Methods

# Chapter 7

The expert system for multiple alignment construction, evaluation and analysis described in the results section of this thesis were developed using the existing infrastructure and computer resources of the Laboratoire de Biologie et Genomique Integratives (LBGI) and the Plate-forme Bio-informatique de Strasbourg (BIPS). The BIPS is a high-throughput platform for comparative and structural genomics, which was identified in 2003 as a national inter-organisational technology platform (Plate-forme Nationale RIO). The BIPS obtained the ISO 9001:2000 certification in 2007.

# 7.1 Computing resources

## 7.1.1 Servers

Three central servers are currently available for program development and computational data analyses:

(i) Interactive and web services: Sun Enterprise 450 (Solaris 9). 4 processors with 1 Gb shared memory.

(ii) Computational servers:

• 6 Compaq ES40 cluster (Tru64 UNIX). 6 x 4 EV67 processors. Of the 6 machines in this cluster, 5 have 4 Gb memory each, and the sixth has 16 Gb.

6 Sun Enterprise V40z server (2 x Solaris 10 and 4 x RedHat Enterprise Linux
4). 6 x 4 Opteron processors with 2 x 32 Gb and 4 x 16 Gb memory.

(iii) Disk server: Sun V480 (Solaris 9) providing 8 Tera-bytes on Raid5 disks shared with other servers using NFS.

## 7.1.2 Databases

A number of general as well as some more specialist databases are installed and updated regularly on the LBGI servers. These databases are available in GCG format [264] and can also be queried using the SRS (Sequence Retrieval Software) [265].

#### Generalist databases:

The main public sequence and structure databases have been installed locally on the IGBMC servers. The protein sequence database Uniprot [266], consists of both SwissProt and SpTrEMBL databases [75]. The SpTrEMBL sequences are produced by automatic translation of the coding sequences from the EMBL nucleotide sequence database. After validation and annotation by experts, the sequences in SpTrEMBL are incorporated in the SwissProt database. The protein 3D structure database PDB (Protein Data Bank) [267], includes structures determined by X-ray crystallography or by NMR. The amino acid sequences of the proteins or domains in PDB are also available.

#### Specialist databases:

In addition to these generalist databases, a number of specialist databases are maintained locally. In particular, the InterPro database [191] contains information on protein families, protein domains and functional sites. InterPro is a collaboration between a number of different protein signature databases, including the protein domain databases: Pfam [268], Prodom [269], Smart [270] and the protein pattern databases: Prints [30] and Prosite [28]. Protein signatures are manually integrated into InterPro database entries and are then curated to provide reliable biological and functional information. InterPro also provides links to other specialised databases, including the Gene Ontology [89]. The Interpro database contains signature information for many of the sequences in the generalist databases. Other sequences, that have not yet been integrated, can be used as queries to search the database using the Interproscan software.

Commentaire [j15] : ref

### 7.1.3 Data retrieval

Structural and functional information was retrieved from the public databases using the Bird system developed in-house. The BIRD System (Nguyen et al, CORIA 2008, Hermes Edition) was designed to manage large collections of biological data and to perform intensive computation and simulation A generic configurable data model has been designed and allows the simultaneous integration of genomics, transcriptomics and ontology datasets using a limited number of product mapping rules provided by the user (operator or system

administrator). The integration rules allow the easy creation of a database according to semantic topics and real requirements. BIRD is driven by a high level query engine (BIRD-QL), based on SQL and a full text engine allowing the biologist to quickly extract knowledge without programming. Thus, the system is capable of generating sub-databases in accordance with the real requirements of a given project. The hosted data can then be accessed by the wider community using various methods such as a Web interface, Http Service, an API Java or a BIRD-QL Engine Query.

The BIRD System is developed using the Java technology and uses the IBM DB2 as the data server, as well as the Websphere Federation Server for virtual databases. The web application is hosted either by a Tomcat Server or by a WebSphere Application Server.

# 7.2 MSA programs

Comparative analyses of the diverse algorithms used to align protein sequences have identified many of their strengths and weaknesses and have led to significant progress in the field recently. Today, there are hundreds of different programs available for the construction of multiple sequence alignments and it is clearly impossible to incorporate all of these in AlexSys. We therefore selected a small number of aligners, representing different alignment approaches. ClustalW is a global alignment method, while Dialign uses a local alignment algorithm. Mafft and Muscle were developed more recently and use both local and global information to construct the alignment. Kalign and Mafft are very fast aligners, while ProbCons is less efficient but often produces a higher quality final alignment.

ClustalW (version 2.0) performs a traditional progressive alignment, by first comparing all pairs of sequences, then building a guide tree using the Neighbour Joining approach, and finally aligning all the sequences according to the branch order in the guide tree. For sequences that are globally related, ClustalW often provides accurate alignments, while in more complex cases it can be used as a good starting point for further refinement.

Dialign [271] (version 2.2.1) constructs multiple alignments by comparing segments of the sequences, rather than single residues. The main difference between Dialign and the other alignment approaches is the underlying scoring scheme or objective function. Instead of summing up substitution scores for aligned residues and subtracting gap penalties, the score of an alignment is based on P-values of local sequence similarities. Only those parts of the

sequences are aligned that share some statistically significant similarity, unrelated parts of the sequences remain unaligned. This approach is particularly successful in situations where sequences share only local homologies.

Mafft (version 6.240) (Multiple sequence alignment based on Fast Fourier Transform) (option FFT-NS-i) is a fast aligner that builds an initial progressive alignment using an approximate measure based on shared 6-tuples to estimate the distance between pairs of sequences. A guide tree is then generated using the UPGMA algorithm with modified linkage and sequences are aligned following the branch order of the tree. The initial MSA is then improved by recalculating the distance matrix and repeating the progressive alignment steps. The final phase involves an iterative refinement to optimise a weighted sum of pairs (WSP) [272] score, using a group-to-group alignment and a tree-dependent restricted partitioning technique.

Muscle (version 3.7) (Multiple sequence comparison by log-expectation) uses a three phase approach similar to the one implemented in Mafft. In the initial alignment phase, a k-mer distance is used to estimate the pairwise distances and the guide tree is built using the UPGMA algorithm. The initial MSA is then improved by calculating a more accurate Kimura distance [273] for aligned pairs, again repeating the progressive alignment steps. The final iterative refinement stage employs a variant of the tree dependent restricted partitioning algorithm.

Kalign (version 2.03) also uses a progressive alignment approach, the main difference being that it employs the Wu-Manber approximate string matching algorithm [274] when calculating the distances among sequences. This methodology allows for a fast, yet accurate distance estimation. As in Mafft and Muscle, the UPGMA algorithm is used to build the guide tree. In addition, the program performs a consistency check in order to define the largest set of sequence matches that can be inserted in the alignment, using a modified version of the Needleman-Wunsch algorithm [216] to find the most consistent path through the dynamic programming matrix.

ProbCons (version 1.12) (Probabilistic Consistency-based MSA) incorporates a pairhidden Markov model-based progressive alignment algorithm. The alignment procedure is divided into four steps, starting with a computation of posterior-probability matrices for every pair of sequences, followed by a dynamic programming calculation of the expected accuracy

of every pairwise alignment. A probabilistic consistency transformation is then used to reestimate the match accuracy scores. A guide tree is calculated with hierarchical clustering and the sequences are aligned using a progressive approach. In a post-processing phase, random bi-partitions of the generated alignment are realigned in order to check for better alignment regions.

# 7.3 Other bioinformatics programs and utilities

## 7.3.1 MACSIMS

MACSIMS [275] (Multiple Alignment of Complete Sequences Information Management System) is a multiple alignment-based information management system that combines the advantages of both knowledge-based and *ab initio* sequence analysis methods. Structural and functional information is mined automatically from the public databases. In the MACS, homologous regions are identified and the mined data is evaluated and propagated from known to unknown sequences with these reliable regions (Figure 19). MACSIMS thus provides a unique tool for the integration of heterogeneous information in the context of the multiple alignment and the presentation of the most pertinent information to the biologist.



#### Figure 19 : Schematic view of the MACSIMS alignment annotation system.

## 7.3.2 Biojava

Biojava [276] is an open-source project dedicated to providing a Java framework for processing biological data. It provides analytical and statistical routines, parsers for common file formats and allows the manipulation of sequences and 3D structures. The goal of the biojava project is to facilitate rapid application development for bioinformatics. Biojava API was used in AlexSys to handle several tasks such as sequence data accession, parsing and pairwise alignment generation.

# 7.4 Alignment benchmarks

Multiple alignment benchmarks are used to evaluate and compare the accuracy of the results obtained from alternative software tools. The benchmarks generally consist of two components: (i) a set of reference alignments that are assumed to be "correct", referred to as the gold standard, and (ii) some means of evaluating the quality of the alignments obtained by the different software tools. The evaluation of a given tool can be based on independent quality scores; more often, though, the output of the program is compared to the correct solution specified by the benchmark.

In this work we used two benchmarks that are widely used for multiple sequence alignment assessment, BAliBASE and OXBench.

### 7.4.1 BAliBASE

The alignment test cases in the BAliBASE benchmark are based on 3D structural superpositions that are manually refined to ensure the correct alignment of conserved residues. The alignments are organised into reference sets that are designed to represent real multiple alignment problems. The first version of BAliBASE consisted of 5 reference sets representing many of the problems encountered by multiple alignment methods at that time. Thus, Reference 1 contains alignments of equidistant sequences and is divided into six subsets, according to three different sequence lengths and two levels of sequence variability. Reference 2 contains families aligned with one or more highly divergent "orphan" sequences, Reference 3 contains divergent subfamilies, Reference 4 contains sequences with large N/C-terminal extensions, and Reference 5 contains sequences with large internal insertions. The

three Reference sets (6-8) devoted to the particular problems posed by sequences with transmembrane regions, repeats and inverted domains, were not used in this work. Table 3 shows the size of the latest version of the benchmark used for evaluating AlexSys.

Reference 1	Small numbe					
	short	medium	long	sub-total		
V1 (<20% identity)	14	12	12	38		
V2 (20-40% identity	14	16	15	45		
Reference 2	Family with one or more 'orphan' sequences					
Reference 3	Divergent su	30				
Reference 4	Large N/C te	Large N/C terminal extensions				
Reference 5	Large internal insertions					
Total				217		

Table 3 : Number of test cases in version 3 of the BAliBASE alignment benchmark

In each reference alignment, core blocks are defined that exclude the regions for which the 3D structure superpositions are unreliable, for example, the borders of secondary structure elements or in loop regions. Alignment programs were then compared using only the reliable core blocks.

## 7.4.2 OXBench

This benchmark provides multiple alignments of proteins that are built automatically using structure and sequence alignment methods. The benchmark is divided into three data sets. The master set currently consists of 673 alignments of protein domains of known 3D structure, with from 2 to 122 sequences in each alignment. The extended data set is constructed from the master set by including sequences of unknown structure. Finally, the full-length data set includes the full-length sequences for the domains in the master data set.

# 7.5 Weka machine learning package

The Weka (Waikato Environment for Knowledge Analysis) workbench is a selection of state-of-the-art data preprocessing tools and machine learning methods, including clustering, classification, regression and feature selection. Weka is freely available (sourceforge.net/projects/weka/) under the GNU General Public License. It is implemented in

the Java programming language and thus runs on almost any modern computing platform. It was developed to enable scientists to rapidly check out existing approaches on new datasets in versatile ways. It offers considerable support for the entire procedure for experimental data mining, such as preparing the input data, analyzing learning schemes statistically, and visualizing the input data and the end result of learning. This diverse and complete toolkit is used via a common user interface so that users can evaluate various methods easily and determine the ones that are most suitable for the problem at hand.

# 7.6 UIMA: Unstructured Information Management Architecture

UIMA was originally developed by IBM as a platform for creating, integrating and deploying unstructured information management solutions from powerful text or multi-modal analysis and search components. The Apache UIMA project is an implementation of the Java UIMA framework available under the Apache License, providing a common foundation for industry and academia to collaborate and accelerate the world-wide development of technologies critical for discovering vital knowledge present in the fastest growing sources of information today.

An unstructured information management (UIM) application may be generally characterized as a software system that analyzes large volumes of unstructured information (text, audio, video, images, etc.) to discover, organize and deliver relevant knowledge to the client or application end-user. An example is an application that processes millions of medical abstracts to discover critical drug interactions. Although UIMA was originally designed to manage unstructured information, it can also accept structured data, for example, from formatted flat files or relational databases.

This section presents an overview of the basic architectural philosophy of UIMA and the essential components for expert system construction.

## 7.6.1 The Architecture, the Framework and the SDK

UIMA is a software architecture which specifies component interfaces, data representations, design patterns and development roles for creating, describing, discovering, composing and deploying multi-modal analysis capabilities. The UIMA framework then

provides a run-time environment in which developers can plug in their UIMA component implementations and with which they can build and deploy UIM applications. The framework is not specific to any IDE or platform. Apache hosts a Java and (soon) a C++ implementation of the UIMA Framework. The UIMA Software Development Kit (SDK) includes the UIMA framework, plus tools and utilities for using UIMA. Some of the tools support an Eclipse-based (www.eclipse.org/) development environment.

Many UIM applications analyze entire collections of Input data. They connect to different data sources and do different things with the results.

UIMA supports UIM application development for this general type of processing through its Collection Processing Architecture. As part of the collection processing architecture UIMA introduces two primary components in addition to the annotator and analysis engine.

These are the Collection Reader and the CAS Consumer. The complete flow from source, through input analysis, and to CAS Consumers supported by UIMA is illustrated in Figure 20. The Collection Reader's job is to connect to and iterate through a source collection, acquiring inputs and initializing CASes for analysis.

CAS Consumers, as the name suggests, function at the end of the flow. Their job is to do the final CAS processing. A CAS Consumer may be implemented, for example, to index CAS contents in a search engine, extract elements of interest and populate a relational database or serialize and store analysis results to disk for subsequent and further analysis.

A UIMA Collection Processing Engine (CPE) is an aggregate component that specifies a "source to sink" flow from a Collection Reader though a set of analysis engines and then to a set of CAS Consumers. CPEs are specified by XML files called CPE Descriptors. These are declarative specifications that point to their contained components (Collection Readers, Analysis Engines and CAS Consumers) and indicate a flow among them. The flow specification allows for filtering capabilities, for example, to skip over AEs based on CAS contents.





Figure 20 : UIMA Component Architecture

## 7.6.2 Analysis Engines, Annotators and Results

The basic building blocks of a UIMA application are called Analysis Engines (AEs). One way to think about AEs is as software agents that automatically discover and record meta-data about original raw data. At the heart of AEs are the analysis algorithms that do all the work to analyze raw data and record Analysis Results. UIMA provides a basic component type, called an Annotator, to house these core analysis algorithms. The developer's primary concern therefore is the development of annotators. At the most primitive level, an AE wraps an Annotator, adding the necessary APIs and infrastructure for the composition and deployment of Annotators within the UIMA framework.

## 7.6.3 Representing Analysis Results in the CAS

How annotators represent and share their results is an important part of the UIMA architecture. UIMA defines a Common Analysis Structure (CAS) precisely for this purpose. The CAS is an object-based data structure that allows the representation of objects, properties and values. The CAS thus manages the organization, access and storage of all typed objects associated with the subject of analysis. For example, in a human resources system, Person may be defined as a type. Types have properties or features. So for example, Age and Occupation may be defined as features of the Person type. The object types are defined in a

hierarchically organized annotation Type System (TS). Thus, we can think of a TS as the equivalent of an object schema for a relational database.

## 7.6.4 Component Descriptors

For every component specified in UIMA, such as Annotators and Analysis Engines, there are two parts required for its implementation: the declarative part and the code part. The code part implements the algorithm, for example a program in Java. The declarative part contains metadata describing the component, its identity, structure and behavior and is called the Component Descriptor. In addition to these standard fields, a component descriptor identifies the Type System the component uses and the types it requires in an input CAS and the types it produces in an output CAS. Component descriptors are represented in XML, however the UIMA SDK provides tools for easily creating and maintaining the component descriptors that relieve the developer from editing XML directly.

# 7.6.5 Aggregate Analysis Engines

A simple or primitive UIMA Analysis Engine (AE) contains a single annotator. Annotators tend to perform fairly granular functions, for example language detection, tokenization or part of speech detection. These functions typically address just part of an overall analysis task. More complex AEs may also be defined to contain other AEs organized in a workflow. These are called Aggregate Analysis Engines (AAE).

AAEs are designed to encapsulate potentially complex internal structure and insulate it from users of the AE. The AAE developer acquires the internal components, defines the necessary flow between them in a Flow Controller, and publishes the resulting AE. The Flow Controller is responsible for determining the order in which the AE's will process the CAS. Users of this AAE need not know how it is constructed internally, but only need its name and its published input requirements and output types. These must be declared in the AAE's descriptor. The AAE's descriptor also declares the components it contains and a flow specification. The flow specification defines the order in which the internal component AEs should be run.

The UIMA framework is equipped to handle different deployments where the AEs, for example, are tightly-coupled (running in the same process) or loosely-coupled (running in separate processes or even on different machines). The framework supports a number of

remote protocols for loose coupling deployments of aggregate analysis engines, including SOAP (Simple Object Access Protocol) a standard Web Services communications protocol.

The UIMA framework facilitates the deployment of AEs as remote services by using an adapter layer that automatically creates the necessary infrastructure in response to a declaration in the component's descriptor.

## 7.6.6 Application building and Collection Processing

As mentioned above, the basic AE interface may be thought of as simply CAS in/CAS out. The application is responsible for interacting with the UIMA framework to instantiate an AE, create or acquire an input CAS, initialize the input CAS with a document and then pass it to the AE through the process method. The UIMA AE Factory takes the declarative information from the Component Descriptor and the class files implementing the annotator, and instantiates the AE instance, setting up the CAS and the UIMA Context.

The AE, possibly calling many delegate AEs internally, performs the overall analysis and its process method returns the CAS containing new analysis results.

The application then decides what to do with the returned CAS. There are many possibilities. For instance the application could: display the results, store the CAS to disk for post processing, extract and index analysis results as part of a search or database application etc.

# Results and Discussion

# Preamble: AlexSys Design, Implementation and Evaluation

AlexSys stands for Alignment expert System. It is a knowledge based expert system, whose first objective is to establish a relationship between the nature of the protein sequences to be aligned and the strengths and weaknesses of different alignment algorithms. A more general objective for the development of AlexSys is the introduction of data-driven intelligent systems, rather than fixed, predefined workflows or pipelines. A data-driven platform allows more flexibility and can take into account the context of the analysis, by dynamically modifying the workflow depending on the analysis scenario and the specific features of the input data. The multiple sequence alignment (MSA) problem reported in this work is an ideal case study to address such issues. MSA plays a key role in modern biological research and is used differently depending on the analysis context. For example, a phylogenetic study might have different expectations from a MSA than a functional annotation or 3D structure homology modeling study. By 'different expectations', we implicitly mean MSA accuracy and efficiency.

The work described in this thesis provides some answers to the MSA problem and goes beyond making a simple decision concerning the most suitable algorithm for a given situation. We consider some open questions such as whether today's alignment algorithms can still be considered pertinent, in a context where the sequence space is evolving rapidly and data volumes continue to grow exponentially. Should we control the data to match the algorithms? Or should we allow the data to drive the analysis process, in such a way that the data decides, as a scientist would, which computational methodology is more suited to information extraction and knowledge discovery? In the latter case, we are faced with the problem of how to reuse human expertise in order to learn from the past and to treat as yet unseen cases, thus inferring new knowledge from the data itself. Using cutting-edge technologies, we can now hope to develop novel 'expert' systems that are data driven, incorporating machine learning algorithms, artificial intelligence, and rules learned from the past.

In the following chapters, we will describe how we designed and implemented AlexSys to efficiently drive a multiple alignment construction process. We will list some of

the problems that we faced during the development, and will argue our choices of some specific methodologies rather than others. Chapter 8 will discuss the creation of the knowledge base, used as input for the machine learning algorithm, described in Chapter 9. In Chapter 10, we will discuss the alternative solutions considered for the construction of the expert system itself. Finally, in Chapter 11, we present the evaluation process designed to measure the efficiency and accuracy of the multiple alignment process.

# Chapter 8

# 8. Creation of the AlexSys knowledge base

A crucial element in any computer-based expert system is the knowledge base used to store the theoretical understanding and heuristic problem-solving rules gained from human experts. But first, this knowledge has to be transformed into a form that the computer can use. Section 8.1 describes the most widely used forms of knowledge representation, designed for supervised machine learning algorithms. The remaining sections then describe in more detail some of the specific issues involved in collecting and formatting the necessary background information for the AlexSys machine learning algorithm, that will 'learn' the rules necessary for selecting the most appropriate aligner(s), based on the input data.

## 8.1 Machine Learning Input

A supervised machine learning algorithm uses a set of well understood examples to 'learn' the rules required to classify these examples. This learning process is known as training. The rules learnt can then be used to predict the outcome (known as a concept or class) of a new unknown example.

The information that the learner is provided usually takes the form of a collection of instances. Each instance is an individual, independent example of the concept to be learnt. It is characterized by the values of attributes that determine different facets of the instance. The following sections provide more detailed definitions of the terms: class, instance and attribute.

## 8.1.1 What is a concept (Class)?

Four fundamentally different types of learning are widely used (described in more detail in chapter 3): classification learning, association learning, clustering and numeric prediction. Regardless of the type of learning used, we call the fact to be learned the concept and the output created by the learning system the concept description.

In the contact lens example (Figure 21 (a)), the learning problem is to discover ways to determine a lens prescription for any new individual. Thus, the concept is the lens prescription and the concept description is the method learnt to predict it. The weather data (Figure 21(b)

and Figure 21(c)) shows some days along with a decision to play games or not. Here, the concept (class) to be predicted for each day is *play* or *don't play*. For the irises (Figure 21(d)), the issue is to discover ways to decide whether a new iris flower is setosa, versicolor, or virginica, given its sepal measurements and petal ones.

190	prescription	Astigmatism	rate	lenses	_					
young	myope	no	reduced	none		Sepal length (cm)	Sepal width (cm)	Petal length (cm)	Petal width (cm)	Type
young	myope	no	roducod	SOIL						
vouna	myope	Ves	normal	hard	2	5.1	3.5	14	0.2	Iris setosa
oung	hypermetrope	no	reduced	none	2	4.9	3.0	1.9	0.2	Ins setosa
oung	hypermetrope	no	normal	soft	3	4.0	2.1	1.5	0.2	Inis selosa
poung	hypermetrope	yes	reduced	none	c .	4.0	2.6	1.0	0.2	Ins secosa
oung	hypermetrope	yes	normal	hard	2	5.0	3.0	1.4	0.2	1113 301038
re-presbyopic	myope	no	reduced	none	51	7.0	32	47	14	Iris versicolor
re-presbyopic	myope	no	normal	soft	52	6.4	32	4.5	1.5	Iris versicolor
re-presbyopic	myope	yes	reduced	none	53	6.9	3.1	4.9	1.5	Iris versicolor
re-presbyopic	myope	yes	normal	hard	54	5.5	2.3	4.0	1.3	Iris versicolor
re-presbyopic	hypermetrope	no	reduced	none	55	6.5	2.8	4.6	1.5	Iris versicolor
re-presbyopic	hypermetrope	NOP	roducod	500						
re-presbyopic	hypermetrope	yes	normal	0000	101	6.3	3.3	6.0	2.5	Iris virginica
restwonic	mypermetrope	yes	reduced	none	102	5.8	2.7	5.1	1.9	Iris virginica
resbyopic	myope	00	normal	none	103	7.1	3.0	5.9	2.1	Iris virginica
resbyopic	myope	Ves	reduced	none	104	6.3	2.9	5.6	1.8	Iris virginica
resbyopic	myope	yes	normal	hard	105	6.5	3.0	5.8	2.2	Iris virginica
resbyopic	hypermetrope	no	reduced	none						1992 (1992)
resbyopic	hypermetrope	no	normal	soft	-					
resbyopic	hypermetrope	yes	reduced	none						
rachunnic	hypormotrona	MOR	normal	none				data		
presbyopic	hypermetrope	yes	normal	none			d) Iris	data		
presbyopic	hýpermetrope a) Conta	<sub>yes</sub> act lens data	normal A	none			d) Iris	data		
presbyopic tlook	hypermetrope a) Conta Temperature	yes act lens data Humidity	normal a Windy	Play	Outlook	Te	d) Iris	data Humidity	Wir	idy F
resbyopic look	hypermetrope a) Conta Temperature hot	yes act lens data Humidity high	normal B Windy false	Play no	Outlook	Te	d) Iris	data Humidity 85	Wir fals	idy i
resbyopic look ny	hypermetrope a) Conta Temperature hot hot	yes act lens data Humidity high	normal a Windy false true	Play no no	Outlook sunny sunny	Te	d) Iris	data Humidity 85 90	Wir fals true	idy I
resbyopic look ny ny raast	hypermetrope a) Conta Temperature hot hot	yes act lens data Humidity high high bigh	normal Windy false true falso	Play no no vec	Outlook sunny sunny overcast	Te	d) Iris mperature 85 80 83	data Humidity 85 90 86	Wir fals true	idy i e i e i
look ny ny roast	hypermetrope a) Conta Temperature hot hot hot mild	yes act lens data Humidity high high high bigh	normal Windy false true false	Play no no yes yes	Outlook sunny sunny overcast rainy	Te	d) Iris	Humidity 85 90 86 96	Wir fals true fals fals	idy i e i e i
look ny ny rcast Y	hypermetrope a) Conta Temperature hot hot hot mild	yes act lens data Humidity high high high high	normal Windy false true false false false	Play Ro no yes yes	Outlook sunny sunny overcast rainy	Te	<ul> <li>d) Iris</li> <li>mperature</li> <li>85</li> <li>80</li> <li>83</li> <li>70</li> <li>68</li> </ul>	data Humidity 85 90 86 96 96	Wir fals true fals fals	idy e e e
look ny ny rcast y y	hypermetrope a) Conta Temperature hot hot hot mild cool	yes act lens data Humidity high high high normal	normal Windy false true false false false	Play no no yes yes yes	Outlook sunny sunny overcast rainy rainy	Te	d) Iris	data Humidity 85 90 86 96 80 80 20	Wir fals trué fals fals fals	idy e e e e
look ny ny reast y y	hypermetrope a) Conta Temperature hot hot hot mild cool cool	yes act lens data Humidity high high high high normal normal	normal Windy false true false false false false true	Play no no yes yes yes no	Outlook sunny sunny overcast rainy rainy	Te	d) Iris	data Humidity 85 90 86 96 80 70	Wir fals fals fals fals true	idy i e i e i e i e i
look ny ny reast iy iy iy reast	hýpermetrope a) Conta Temperature hot hot hot mild cool cool cool	yes act lens data Humidity high high high high normal normal normal	normal Windy false true false false true true true	Play no no yes yes yes no yes	Outlook sunny sunny overcast rainy rainy rainy overcast	Te	(1) Iris	data Humidity 85 90 86 96 80 70 65	Win fals fals fals fals true true	idy i e
look ny rcast y y rcast ny rcast ny	hýpermetrope a) Conta Temperature hot hot mild cool cool cool mild	yes Act lens data Humidity high high high normal normal high	normal Windy false true false false false true true true	Play no no yes yes yes no yes no	Outlook sunny sunny overcast rainy rainy rainy overcast sunny	Te	d) Iris	data Humidity 85 90 86 96 80 70 80 70 95	Wir fals fals fals fals true true fals	idy i e i e i e i e i e i e i e i
look ny ny rcast y y rcast ny ny	hýpermetrope a) Conta Temperature hot hot mild cool cool cool cool cool	yes act lens data Humidity high high high normal normal normal high normal	normal Windy false true false false false true false false	Play no no yes yes no yes no yes	Outlook sunny sunny overcast rainy rainy overcast sunny sunny	Te	d) Iris	data Humidity 85 90 86 96 80 96 80 70 65 95 70	Wir fals fals fals fals true true fals	idy i e i e i e i e i e i e i
look ny reast y y y reast ny y y y y y y y y y y y y y	hýpermetrope a) Conta Temperature hot hot mild cool cool cool cool mild cool mild	yes Act lens data Humidity high high high high normal normal normal normal normal	normal Windy false true false false false true true true false false false false	Play no no yes yes yes no yes no yes no yes	Outlook sunny sunny overcast rainy rainy rainy sunny sunny sunny rainy	Te	d) Iris	data Humidity 85 96 86 80 70 55 95 70 80	Wir fals true fals fals fals true fals fals fals	idy i e r e } e } e } e }
resbýopic look ny ny rcast y y y rcast ny ny ny y ny	hýpermetrope a) Conta Temperature hot hot mild cool cool cool cool mild mild mild	yes Act lens data Humidity high high high normal normal normal normal normal normal normal	normal Windy false true false false false true false false false true false false true	Play no no yes yes no yes yes yes yes	Outlook sunny overcast rainy rainy rainy sunny rainy sunny rainy sunny	Te	d) Iris mperature 85 80 83 70 68 65 64 72 69 75 55	data Humidity 85 90 86 96 80 86 96 80 80 65 95 95 70 80 80 70	Wir fals truis fals fals true true fals fals true	idy f
look ny ny ny reast y y y reast ny ny ny ny ny ny ny ny reast	hýpermetrope a) Conta Temperature hot hot hot mild cool cool cool cool mild mild mild mild mild	yes Act lens data Humidity high high high high normal normal normal normal normal normal normal normal normal normal	normal Windy false true true true true true false false false true true true true	Play no no yes yes yes no yes yes yes yes yes yes yes	Outlook sunny sunny overcast rainy rainy sunny sunny rainy sunny sunny	Te	d) Iris mperature 85 80 83 70 68 68 65 64 72 69 75 75 75 75 75	data Humidity 85 90 86 96 80 70 85 95 70 80 70 97 80 70 90	Wir fals fals fals true fals fals fals fals true	idy i e r e y e y e y e y e y e y e y
look ny ny ny rcast ry y y y y rcast ny ny ny roast	hýpermetrope a) Conta Temperature hot hot mild cool cool cool cool cool mild mild mild mild mild mild	yes Act lens data Humidity high high high normal	normal Windy false true false false false true false false true true false true	Play no no yes yes no yes yes yes yes yes yes	Outlook sunny overcast rainy rainy overcast sunny sunny sunny overcast	Te	d) Iris mperature 85 80 83 70 68 65 64 64 72 69 75 75 75 72 81	Humidity 85 90 86 80 70 65 95 95 70 80 70 70 90 70 90 70	Win fals fals fals fals fals fals fals fals	Idy   9   1 9   1 9   1 9   1 9   1 9   1 9   1 9   1 1 9   1 1 1 1
look ny ny ny reast yy yy reast ny ny y ny y reast reast	hýpermetrope a) Conta Temperature hot hot hot mild cool cool cool cool mild mild mild mild mild hot	yes Act lens data Humidity high high high normal normal normal normal normal normal high normal normal	normal Windy false true true false false false true true false false true true false false false	Play Play no no yes yes no yes yes yes yes yes yes yes yes	Outlook sunny sunny overcast rainy rainy rainy sunny sunny rainy sunny avercast overcast	Te	d) Iris mperature 85 80 83 70 68 65 64 72 69 75 75 75 75 75 75 72 81 71	data Humidity 85 90 86 96 80 70 55 95 70 80 70 80 70 90 75 90 95	Win fals trots fals fals true true true true true true	idy F e r e y e y e y e y e y e y e y e y e y
look ny ny ny reast iy iy iy iy iy iy reast ny ny ny y ny y reast rest y	hýpermetrope a) Conta Temperature hot hot mild cool cool mild cool mild mild mild mild mild mild	yes Act lens data Humidity high high high normal normal normal normal normal normal normal normal high	normal Windy false true false false false false false false false true true true true true true true tru	Play no no yes yes no yes yes yes yes yes yes yes no	Outlook sunny sunny overcast rainy rainy sunny sunny sunny sunny overcast rainy	Te	() Iris	data Humidity 85 90 86 96 80 70 80 70 95 70 80 70 95 70 95 70 95 70 95 70 95 95 70 95 95 70 95 95 95 95 95 95 95 95 95 95 95 95 95	Wir fals trut fals fals trut fals trut trut trut trut trut trut trut	idy 1 e

Figure 21 : Input data examples for machine learning algorithms

Lines corresponds to instances, columns to attributes, and the last column generally serves as Class

## 8.1.2 What is an example (Instance)?

The examples input to the machine learning system are known as instances. Most of these instances tend to be things that should be classified, associated, or clustered. Although we have referred to them as examples so far, henceforth we will make use of the more specific name 'instances' to refer to the input. Every instance is an individual, independent example associated with the class to be learned. For example, in the weather data shown above, each represents one instance. Each instance is described by the values of some

established attributes. In the case of the weather example, days are characterized by outlook, temperature, humidity and wind conditions. A dataset is then represented by a matrix of instances versus attributes, which in database terminology is usually a single relation, or a flat file. Providing the input information as separate instances is probably the most frequent scenario for useful machine learning.

### 8.1.3 What is an attribute?

Every unique, independent instance that is used as input to machine learning is described by a fixed, predetermined group of characteristics or attributes. The instances are the rows of the tables shown above for the weather, contact lens, and iris examples, and the attributes are the columns Figure 21. The application of a predetermined list of features imposes an additional limitation on machine learning. What if different instances possess different attributes? If the instances were transport vehicles, then number of tires is an attribute that relates to several vehicles although not to boats, for example, while number of masts could be a feature that relates to ships although not to land vehicles. The conventional workaround would be to make every possible feature an attribute and to employ a special "irrelevant value" flag in order to specify that a specific attribute is not designed for a particular situation. The value of an attribute for any specific case is often a measurement of the quantity to which the attribute relates. Attributes can be defined as numeric, nominal or ordinal:

- Numeric attributes, often referred to as continuous attributes, determine numbers both real and integer values. It should be noted that the word continuous is sometimes misused in this context: integer-valued attributes are generally not continuous from the mathematical point of view.
- Nominal attributes refer to values that are restricted to a pre-specified, limited group of possibilities and therefore are often called categorical attributes. But there are other possibilities. Nominal quantities have values that are distinct symbols. The values themselves serve just as labels or names—hence the term nominal, which comes from the Latin word for name. For example, in the weather data the attribute outlook has values: sunny, overcast, and rainy. No relation is implied among these three—no ordering or distance measure. It certainly does not make

sense to add the values together, multiply them, or even compare their size. A rule using such an attribute can only test for equality or inequality, as follows:

outlook: sunny  $\rightarrow$  no overcast  $\rightarrow$  yes rainy  $\rightarrow$  yes

• Ordinal quantities are ones that make it possible to rank order the categories. However, although there is a notion of ordering, there is no notion of distance. For example, in the weather data the attribute temperature has values hot, mild, and cool. These are ordered. Whether we say

#### hot > mild > cool or hot < mild < cool

is a matter of convention—it does not matter which is used as long as consistency is maintained. What is important is that mild lies between the other two. Although it makes sense to compare two values, it does not make sense to add or subtract them—the difference between hot and mild cannot be compared with the difference between mild and cool. A rule using such an attribute might involve a comparison, as follows:

temperature = hot  $\rightarrow$  no temperature < hot  $\rightarrow$  yes

# 8.2 AlexSys Instance Selection

Preparing the input for a machine learning algorithm usually represents the most significant portion of the effort invested in the entire process. Bitter experience shows that real data is often of disappointingly low in quality, and careful checking—a process that has become known as data cleaning—pays off many times over. In the case of Alexsys, the Instances for the learning process correspond to multiple sequence alignments. In order to predict how alignment algorithms will perform in real world situations, it is crucial to select alignments that represent real problems. Based on previous comparisons of alignment benchmarks, we initially chose to use alignments from the BAliBASE and OXBench benchmarks. We thus used the 218 alignments in BAliBASE References 1-5, corresponding to (i) equidistant sequences with various levels of conservation, (ii) families aligned with a highly divergent 'orphan' sequence, (iii) subgroups with <25% residue identity between

groups, (iv) sequences with N/C-terminal extensions and (v) internal insertions. These 218 alignments contain a total of 6222 protein sequences, including both full length sequences and fragmentary sequences from the PDB database. In addition to the alignments from BAliBASE, we used the set of 672 extended alignments from OXBench, containing a total of 66742 protein sequences. These alignments contain sequences corresponding to isolated structural domains. The combined data set was then divided into a training set of 712 alignments (80% of the alignments were selected at random) used to create the rules in the inference engine and a test set of 178 alignments (the remaining 20%) used for evaluation purposes.

# 8.3 AlexSys attribute selection

The majority of machine learning algorithms are designed to determine which attributes are the most pertinent to use for generating their decisions for a given problem. For instance, decision tree methods (described in chapter 9) select the most discriminating attribute at each level and, in theory, should not choose irrelevant or unhelpful attributes. Therefore, again in theory, using more attributes to describe the set of instances, should result in better discrimination and better prediction accuracy.

Nevertheless, tests using a decision tree learner (C4.5) and standard datasets have established that incorporating a random binary attribute leads to a decrease in the overall classification performance (typically by 5% to 10% in the situations tested). This happens simply because at some point in the training process, the irrelevant attribute is selected, leading to random errors in the subsequent predictions.

Decision tree classifiers have problems with this effect since they inflexibly reduce the quantity of data on which they base decision taking. Instance-based learners are prone to irrelevant attributes since they usually operate in local neighborhoods, getting a few training instances into consideration for each decision. Indeed, the amount of training instances required to make a predetermined degree of efficiency for instance-based learning often increases significantly with the number of unimportant attributes present. Naïve Bayes, by comparison, does not fragment the instance space and robustly disregards unimportant attributes. It assumes that most attributes are separate from one another, a supposition which is good for random "distracter" attributes. But through this very same supposition, Naïve

Commentaire [MSOffice16] eference

Bayes pays a huge cost in other ways since its procedure is harmed by the addition of redundant attributes.

The fact that irrelevant attributes lower the performance of state-of-the art decision tree and rule learners is, initially, surprising. Much more surprising is the fact that relevant attributes may also be harmful. For instance, suppose that in a two-class dataset a new attribute is added that has the same value as the class to be predicted most of the time (65%) and the opposite value the rest of the time, randomly distributed among the instances. Experiments with standard datasets have shown that this can cause classification accuracy to deteriorate (by 1% to 5% in the situations tested). The problem is that the new attribute is (naturally) chosen for splitting high up in the tree. This has the effect of fragmenting the set of instances available at the nodes below, so that subsequent choices are based on sparser data.

Because of the negative effect of irrelevant attributes on most machine learning algorithms, the learning process is often preceded by an attribute selection stage to try to eliminate all but the most relevant attributes. The best way to select relevant attributes is manually, based on a deep understanding of the learning problem and what the attributes actually mean. However, automatic methods can also be useful. Reducing the dimensionality of the data by removing unsuitable attributes improves the accuracy of learning algorithms. It also speeds them up, although this may be outweighed by the computation involved in attribute selection. More importantly, dimensionality reduction yields a more compact, more easily interpretable representation of the rules, focusing the user's attention on the most relevant attributes.

In the case of AlexSys, the selection of pertinent features or 'attributes', that adequately describe the input sequences, posed particular problems. There are two possibilities that could make of this task either efficient or long and difficult. If we choose the appropriate features that have an effect on the quality of the alignments obtained by the different algorithms, the problem is simply one of optimization of these features. In contrast, a random choice of features could lead to a long, iterative process of attribute evaluation and testing. Based on our previous knowledge acquired working on multiple sequence alignments, we identified the following relevant attributes:

• The number of sequences in the dataset has been shown to be determinant for the running time of an alignment program or its accuracy. In the high throughput context,

Commentaire [MSOffice17] eference

**Commentaire [MSOffice18]** ho said manual is best? Do you have a reference?

this feature plays an important role in the alignment process. Thus it is important to consider this attribute when making a decision on which algorithm to use.

- The sequence length has also been shown to affect the efficiency and accuracy of alignment programs. In order to fully describe the variability observed within a set of sequences to be aligned, we defined a number of attributes, namely the minimal and maximal lengths, the mean and the standard deviation.
- The similarity of the sequences to be aligned clearly has an effect on alignment quality. More similar sequences are generally aligned better than more divergent ones. Here, we use the residue percent identity to measure the similarity of the sequences, based on pairwise alignments of all the sequences in the dataset. As for sequence length, a number of attributes are defined (minimum, maximum, mean and standard deviation) to describe the variability observed in the dataset.
- To investigate the impact of protein structural information on the alignment strategy, the following attributes were defined: the number of sequences with known 3D structure (as defined in the PDB database), the average number of residues found in α-helices in each sequence, and the average number of residues found in β-strands in each sequence. These attributes are mined using our in-house programs that connect to the PDB via Bird (described in the Materials and Methods).
- The presence of multi-domain proteins, where each domain may have a different evolutionary history, poses problems for multiple alignment construction. Here, we use the average number of functional domains per sequence, according to the Pfam database to estimate this effect.
- Most alignment algorithms are optimized to align globular protein domains. Therefore, we included measures of low complexity, or non-globular regions, namely; the number of sequences with low complexity regions and the average number of regions with low complexity per sequence.
- In order to investigate the effects of amino acid composition, we defined a number of features including average hydrophobicity of the sequences, average number of predicted transmembrane segments per sequence and average amino acid composition based on the six groups: [PAGST], [DEQN], [KRH], [LIVM], [FWY] and [C].

These attributes are then used to establish potential relationships between the input sequences and the performance of the individual aligners. Table 4 classifies the selected features into physical, structural, functional and physico-chemical attributes.

Physical properties	Structural properties	Functional properties	Physico-chemical properties
* number of sequences	* sequences with known 3D structure	* number of functional domains per sequence	* hydrophobicity of the sequences
* sequence length * pairwise residue percent identity	<ul> <li>* number of residues found in α-helices per sequence</li> <li>* number of residues found in β-strands per sequence</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>* number of sequences with low complexity regions</li> <li>* number of regions with low complexity per sequence</li> <li>* number of predicted transmembrane segments per sequence,</li> </ul>	* amino acid composition based on the six groups: [PAGST], [DEQN], [KRH], [LIVM], [FWY] and [C]

Table 4 : Attributes used to describe the input data in AlexSysThe attributes are categorized in four division; physical, physicochemical, structural andFunctional.

It is important to note that all these attributes can be determined based on the unaligned sequences. Therefore, they can be calculated before the multiple alignment process begins. In this way, we can select '*ab initio*' the most suitable alignment program to use.

Although these attributes are known to significantly affect alignment quality, it is clear that they do not completely explain the differences observed in the alignment programs performance. The full optimisation of the most useful attributes is ongoing and will be discussed in more detail in the perspectives section of this thesis.

## **8.4 ARFF format**

There exists a standard file format for representing datasets which include independent, unordered instances and do not contain relationships between instances, known as ARFF (Attribute-Relation File Format). Figure 22 illustrates an ARFF file for the weather data in Figure 21(c). Lines starting with a % character are comments. These are followed by the relation (weather) and a block listing the attributes (outlook, temperature, humidity, windy, play?). Nominal attributes are accompanied by the list of values they can accept, surrounded by curly braces. Values may contain spaces, in which case, they should be placed inside quotation marks. Numeric values are followed by the keyword numeric.



#### Figure 22 : Example ARFF files.

a) A typical ARFF file corresponding to the weather data example and b) the ARFF file used in the context of AlexSys, representing the different attributes as well as the first line of the data itself (file truncated).

Although the weather issue is to estimate the class value 'play?' from the values of the different attributes, the class concept is not defined in this format. Indeed, the ARFF format does not designate which of the attributes is to be predicted. This means that the same file may be used for example, to investigate how effectively each attribute can be predicted from the others, or to discover association rules, or for clustering. In addition to nominal and numeric attributes, shown in the weather data for example, the ARFF format has two additional attribute types, string and date attributes. String attributes have values that are textual. After the attribute definitions, the **@data** line indicates the beginning of the instances in the dataset. Instances are written one per line, with the values for each attribute in turn, separated by commas. If a value is missing, it is represented by a single question mark (there are no missing values in these datasets). The attribute specifications in ARFF files allow validation of the dataset to make sure that it includes legal values for all attributes, and applications that read ARFF files generally do this automatically.

# Chapter 9

# 9. Machine learning in AlexSys

The goal of the machine learning stage in AlexSys is to determine the most appropriate alignment program to use, given a specific set of sequences to align. In the previous chapter, we discussed the input to this learning step, in terms of training instances, and their associated attributes. More specifically, the input to the AlexSys machine learning process is a set of training alignments, and a number of pre-calculated characteristics which describe the sequence set to be aligned. The goal of the learning process is to use these training alignments in order to determine a set of rules that can be used to select a suitable alignment program, i.e. given a set of sequences, can we predict which alignment program will produce the best multiple alignment?

The definition of the machine learning model in AlexSys is described in Section 9.1. We chose to base our model on a decision tree algorithm (i) because we needed a method that clearly describe our input attributes in relation with our classes, and (ii) because of the wide use of decision trees in bioinformatics, they have proved to be effective. In section 9.2, we discuss the general issues involved in building an accurate decision tree and the remaining sections then describe in more detail the decision tree algorithm used in AlexSys and its initial evaluation.

## 9.1 Defining a suitable model

Before starting the model creation, we need to pose the pertinent question that fits our problem. We initially attempted to predict the most suitable multiple sequence alignment algorithm (aligner) for a set of sequences. We therefore created a single model containing the alignment instances, the attributes, and as a class (the decision) a nominal value (label) corresponding to the name of the highest scoring aligner. For the benchmark alignments used here, the sum-of-pairs (SP) scores obtained by each aligner are calculated with reference to the 'correct' alignment. Thus, we defined six classes corresponding to the six multiple sequence alignment programs. After testing the model using the facilities in the Weka
package (decision trees and cross validation), we obtained a classification performance that did not exceed 40%. In the context of AlexSys, this was not satisfactory, since the model resulted in an error rate of 60% when trying to attribute an aligner to a given instance. Two explanations were possible for this poor performance. First, the scores obtained by different aligners were identical or very similar for a certain number of the instances. For example, for a given instance, Mafft obtained a score of 0.845, while ClustalW obtained a score of 0.832. It is then difficult to distinguish between the two aligners. Second, the number of instances may not have been sufficient to resolve this multi-class problem.

This led us to redesign the question so that we could reduce the problem to a binary classification one. Thus, we divided our original model into 6 separate ones, each corresponding to a single aligner. In each model, the performance (class) of the aligner is defined as 'strong' or 'weak' for the instance. The problem was then the quantification of the strength or weakness of each aligner. We chose to specify a critical threshold that makes an alignment acceptable or not, based on the SP score of the alignment. Above a threshold of 0.5, an aligner is considered to be Strong, and below this value, an aligner is considered to be Weak. The final model is shown in Figure 23.





Instances, attributes and classes are presented in a Matrix. Several tools exists within the package for preprocessing of the input before classification, such as filters that are used for a better prediction (selection of the best attributes, normalization, instances resampling ...).

The performance of several machine learning algorithms based this model will be discussed below. Here, we would like to point out another advantage of this binary classification system. By creating separate models for each aligner. we have the possibility to choose several aligners that are likely to perform well, rather than a single 'best' one. In the future, this will allow us to construct alternative alignments for the same set of sequences, for example to "merge" them into a single consensus alignment. Thus, our model is very flexible and can be easily adapted to the future evolution of alignment algorithms.

## 9.2 Constructing a Decision Tree

The challenge of building a decision tree can be stated recursively. First, choose an attribute to position at the root node and create one branch for every possible value. This splits up the example group into subsets, one for each value of the attribute. At this point, the process can be repeated recursively for every branch, using only those instances that are grouped on the branch. If at any time most cases in a node have the same classification, we stop building that part of the tree.

The remaining problem concerns how to determine which attribute to split on, given a set of examples with various classes. Let's consider the weather data used in chapter 8. There are four choices for every split, and at the first level they produce trees like those in Figure 24. Which is the best option? The number of yes and no classes are shown at the leaves. Any leaf with just one class - yes or no - will not need to be divided further, and the recursive procedure down that branch will end.



Figure 24 : Tree construction for the weather data introduced in chapter 8 (from Witten and Frank, 2005).

At a given step in the tree construction process, one of four possible attributes has to be selected to split the set of training instances. Attributes are shown in circles and their associated values are indicated on the arrows. The classes of the training instances (yes or no) are shown in grey boxes.

Since we are looking for small trees (i.e. trees with a small number of levels), we would like this to take place as quickly as possible. If we had a way of measuring the purity of every node, we could select the attribute that generates the best child nodes. The measure of purity that is used in general is known as the information and it is calculated in units called bits. Related to a node of the tree, it represents the expected amount of information that could be required to decide whether a new instance should be classified yes or no, considering the fact that the example attained that node. In contrast to the bits in computer memory, the expected amount of information usually requires fractions of a bit, and is usually lower than 1. We determine it depending on the amount of yes and no classes at the node; we will consider the initial tree in Figure 25, the number of yes and no classes at the leaf nodes are [2,3], [4,0], and [3,2], respectively, and the information values of these nodes are:

info([2,3]) = 0.971 bits info([4,0]) = 0.0 bitsinfo([3,2]) = 0.971 bits

We can calculate the average information value of these, taking into account the number of instances that are grouped at each branch, five at the first and third and four at the second:

 $info([2,3], [4,0], [3,2]) = (5/14) \times 0.971 + (4/14) \times 0 + (5/14) \times 0.971 = 0.693$  bits.

This kind of mean signifies the amount of information that we think could be required to identify the class of a new instance, given the tree structure in Figure 25(a). Before the creation of any of the nascent tree structures in Figure 25, the training examples at the root consisted on nine yes and five no nodes, corresponding to an information value of

info([9,5]) = 0.940 bits.

Thus the tree in Figure 25(a) is responsible for an information gain of

gain(outlook) = info([9,5]) - info([2,3], [4,0], [3,2]) = 0.940 - 0.693 = 0.247 bits,

and this can be viewed as the informational value of making a branch on the outlook attribute. The way forward is clear. We determine the information gain for every attribute and select the one which gets probably the most information to split on. In the situation of Figure 25

gain(outlook) = 0.247 bits gain(temperature) = 0.029 bits gain(humidity) = 0.152 bits gain(windy) = 0.048 bits,



Figure 25 : Expanded tree stumps for the weather data (from Witten and Frank, 2005).

therefore we choose outlook as being the splitting attribute at the root of the tree. It is the only selection for which one daughter node is totally pure, which gives it a substantial advantage over the different attributes. Humidity is the next best option since it produces a larger daughter node which is nearly completely pure. Next we continue, recursively. Figure 26 shows the number of choices for a further branch at the node attained when outlook is sunny. Obviously, an additional split on outlook will generate nothing new, so we just take into account the other three attributes. The information gain regarding each turns out to be

gain(temperature) = 0.571 bits gain(humidity) = 0.971 bitsgain(windy) = 0.020 bits,

so we select humidity as the splitting attribute at this point. There is no need to split these nodes any further, so this branch is finished. Continued application of the same idea leads to the decision tree of Figure 26 for the weather data. Ideally, the process terminates when all leaf nodes are pure, that is, when they contain instances that all have the same classification. However, it might not be possible to reach this happy situation because there is nothing to stop the training set containing two examples with identical sets of attributes but different classes. Consequently, we stop when the data cannot be split any further.



Figure 26 : Final Decision tree (from Witten and Frank, 2005).

## 9.2.1 AlexSys decision tree algorithm

For the construction of the decision tree in AlexSys, we used the Weka machine learning software (see Materials and Methods). We tested three widely used decision tree algorithms implemented in this package:

The C4.5 (known in Weka as J48) [277]algorithm generates a classification or decision tree by recursive partitioning of the dataset. At each node of the tree, C4.5 chooses one attribute of the data that most effectively splits the samples into subsets enriched in one class or the other, based on a normalized information gain score.

The Random Tree algorithm [278] is a fast decision tree learner that constructs a tree from random permutations. With k random features at each node, a tree is drawn at random from a set of possible trees and again, information gain is used as a selection criterion.

The Random Forest algorithm [279] combines an ensemble classifier and the random selection of features, in order to construct a collection of decision trees with controlled

variation. Each tree defines a classification, and is said to "vote" for that classification. The forest algorithm then chooses the classification having the most votes (over all the trees in the forest).

## 9.3 Model and Machine Learning Evaluation

Evaluation is paramount to making genuine improvement in machine learning. Given the training set, we could simply measure how effectively different methods perform on this data. However, efficiency on the training set may be a bad indicator of performance on other unknown test sets. We therefore need methods for predicting the true performance in blind tests. When various sets of data are available this is no problem, we simply train a model on a sizable training set, and evaluate it on a separate large test set. However, it is often the case that data, at least quality data, is rare.

Based on restricted data, comparing the efficiency of various machine learning techniques is not as simple as it might seem and reliable, statistical tests are needed. One solution to this is cross-validation. One of the simplest approaches, given a single source of quality data, is the holdout method, which reserves a certain amount for testing and uses the remainder for training. In practical terms, it is common to hold out one-third of the data for testing and use the remaining two-thirds for training.

In this case, it is important that the samples used for training and testing are representative. In general, it is difficult to tell whether a sample is representative or not, however random sampling can be used to ensure that each class is represented in similar proportions in the training and testing sets. Another solution is to repeat the whole training and testing process several times with different random samples. In each iteration, a certain proportion, e.g. two-thirds of the data, is randomly selected for training and the remainder used for testing. The performances on the different iterations are averaged to give an overall performance estimate.

A variant of the holdout method is cross-validation. Here, the data is divided into a fixed number of approximately equal parts, usually 10. Each part is held out in turn and the remainder is used for training. Thus the learning procedure is executed a total of 10 times on different training sets (each of which have a lot in common). Finally, the 10 performance estimates are averaged to yield an overall estimate. This 10-fold cross-validation has become

the standard method for evaluating learning algorithms. Nevertheless, a single 10-fold crossvalidation might not be enough to get a reliable performance estimate. Different 10-fold cross-validation experiments with the same learning method and dataset often produce different results, because of the effect of random variation in choosing the parts themselves. Random selection reduces the variation, but it does not eliminate it entirely. More accurate estimates can be obtained by repeating the cross-validation process 10 times, called 10 times 10-fold cross-validation, and average the results. This involves invoking the learning algorithm 100 times on datasets that are all nine-tenths the size of the original. Obtaining a good measure of performance is thus a computation-intensive undertaking.

## 9.3.1 AlexSys Performance and Evaluation

We compared the predictive performance of three different decision tree algorithms, namely Random Tree, Random Forest and J48 with default parameters. Table 5 shows the accuracy of each method, estimated using 10-fold cross validation, which reduces the problems of overfitting. Cross-validation is one of several approaches that can be used to estimate how well the model will perform on future as-yet-unseen data. The Random Forest algorithm is the most accurate predictor for all aligners, except Mafft and Muscle where the Random Tree method performs slightly better. With an average correct classification rate of 94%, this algorithm seems to be the most appropriate for our purposes. Nevertheless, Random Tree and J48 also performed well, with an average correct classification rate of around 92% and 93.2% respectively.

	ClustalW		Dialign		Mafft		Muscle		Kalign		ProbCons		Average (%)	
	CCI	ICI	CCI	ICI	CCI	ICI	CCI	ICI	CCI	ICI	CCI	ICI	ACCI	AICI
J48	812	74	825	61	838	48	842	44	822	64	845	41	93.8%	6.2%
RandomTree	806	80	810	76	816	78	822	64	805	81	839	47	92.1%	7.9%
RandomForest	825	61	828	58	835	51	839	47	823	63	846	40	94	6

Table 5 : Correctly and incorrectly classified instances for each aligner

CCI, correctly classified instances; ICI, incorrectly classified instances; ACCI, average CCI; AICI, average ICI. Numbers shown in bold indicate the best scores for each aligner.

A more detailed study of the performance of the Random Forest algorithm is shown in Figure 27. The results confirm that the classification is highly accurate for all five aligners used here. The true positive (TP) rates range from 0.97 to 0.99 for high scoring multiple alignments (class=Strong), whereas for low scoring alignments (class=Weak) the TP rates range from 0.72 to 0.87. The F-Measure, defined as:

$$F - Measure = \frac{2 \times recall \times precision}{recall + precision} = \frac{2TP}{2TP + FN + FP}$$

is a widely used score in the information retrieval and natural language processing communities and combines measures of precision (also called positive predictive value = TP/TP+FP) and recall (also called sensitivity =TP/TP+FN). The F-measure score ranges from 0.0 to 1.0, with 0.0 indicating the poorest result and 1.0 a perfect retrieval. In these tests, the F-measures for the Random Forest algorithm range from 0.96 to 0.98 for Strong class alignments and from 0.77 to 0.90 for Weak class alignments.

Based on these results, we concluded that the Random Forest approach was the most appropriate for our purposes. This was then used to build the inference engine used by the AlexSys to select the most appropriate aligner for a given set of sequences.





Figure 27 : Evaluation of the Random Forest algorithm for the classification of aligner performance as S=strong or W=weak.

For each aligner, the TP (True Positive rate = proportion of correctly classified instances), FP (False Positive rate = proportion of wrongly classified instances), Precision (=TP/TP+FP), Recall (=TP/TP+FN), F-measure (combines recall and precision scores into a single measure of performance) and ROC area (or the area under the receiver operating characteristic (ROC) curve = the probability that when we randomly pick one positive and one negative example, the classifier will assign a higher score to the positive example than to the negative) are indicated.

## 9.4 Model creation and access through java API

The Weka package offers the possibility to use their Java API to implement certain functions in other software or pipelines. The rich API and the large Weka community allowed us to test our models outside the AlexSys core implementation and then to reproduce the results programmatically through the API.

This feature is well adapted to our case and in the next section we will show how we linked the Weka API to other components in AlexSys. Figure 28 shows a simple case of model building and testing.



Figure 28 : Simple Java code showing how to implement a classifier, using a training set and test set and output the classification results and performance.

The code implemented in AlexSys to connect the knowledge base and the model was verified to ensure that we obtain the same results as in the Weka implementation.

## Chapter 10 10. Expert system construction

## **10.1 Expert system architecture**

Several expert systems are created using solutions or architectures known as expert system shells. The shell is a part of software which supplies a development framework, made up of the user interface, a structure for declarative knowledge in the knowledge base as well as an inference engine. Two popular illustrations are CLIPS (clipsrules.sourceforge.net) and JESS (herzberg.ca.sandia.gov/jess/). The usage of a shell or some other particular resources can optimize development time by decreasing maintenance and increasing reusability and versatility of the application. The drawbacks of specialized tools are that the software will likely not match the exact requirements, resulting in workarounds. The various and to some degree unusual needs of an expert system may considerably worsen this problem. A different option is to develop a customized ES using traditional languages, C etc. or specialized languages such as, LISP or the newer Prolog. There exists a small semantic gap between Prolog code along with the reasonable specification of a program. What this means is that the description of a section of code, and the code are relatively similar. Due to the small semantic gap, the code examples are reduced and more concise than they are often with another language. Using conventional languages, leads to higher portability and efficiency, however this has to be offset with the expanded development and maintenance time required. In conclusion, it is often advised to use a tool when we know the system and problem space are small or when we are planning to throw the prototype away after it has been used for requirements definition. A programming language should be used when enough is known about the scale and extent of the expert system or when performance becomes a major issue.

The UIMA (Unstructured Information Management Architecture) provides an ideal framework for the development of expert systems in bioinformatics. It offers a number of advantages. First, although it is oriented towards text mining tasks, and is considered as a

"langageware" as described by its developers at IBM [280], UIMA allows the user to develop highly modular and easily pluggable applications that can then address complex problems and tasks. The text mining tasks in UIMA have already been used for knowledge extraction from biomedical literature [281]. Second, it offers a java programming environment as well as C++ programming environment, which makes it easy to incorporate already developed bioinformatics programs. In this way, UIMA can be used for the creation of more advanced applications such as the work described in this thesis, which brings together within the same application an unstructured information framework, bioinformatics computational analyses and machine learning algorithms, as shown in Figure 29.



Figure 29 : Interaction between UIMA and public available APIs

UIMA allows to create modules that use external public available APIs, and gather their analysis outputs transforming it into CASes and thus make each output available through the metadata layer to any possible Analysis Engine that may use them.

## **10.2 UIMA module creation**

Before the creation of any primitive or advanced component in UIMA, there are three important mandatory steps to consider: (i) the definition of a Type System, (ii) the development of the Analysis Engine Descriptor file (XML) and finally (iii) the development of the Analysis Engine Annotator (Java code) where all calculations and analyses are implemented.

## 10.2.1 AlexSys Type System

A Type System (TS) in UIMA is the equivalent of a structure or object in a traditional programming language. It is developed using a wizard that allows the creation of a CAS

structure for the TS, as well as the definition of the TS characteristics. An example is shown in Figure 30.

inSequenceTSD.xml	- Edipse					00	
roject <u>B</u> un <u>U</u> IMA <u>W</u>	indow <u>H</u> elp						
😃 🕸 🞯 × 🏼 🕭	😉 🖉 • 🛛 🗞 • 🖉 🖓 • 🖗 🗇	• . (\$)~					
😑 😫 🔛 🕶 🗙	🕼 Test SeePred.java 🛛 🖉 * Run Cl	PMAlexSys.java	PfamAED.	kml 🖆 Pr	roteinSequenceTSD xml ×		
2	Type System Definition					11 1	
nl	- Times (as Classes)				- Imported Time Curte		
aderD.xml	The following types (classes)	defined in this an	The following type systems are included as part of				
tionReader.xml	The grayed out items are imported	d or merged from	this one.	s are included as part of			
_	cannot be edited here. (To edit th	em, edit their so	urce files).	13		Add Remove	
ED.out.xml	Type Name or Feature Name	SuperTy	pe or Range	Add Type		Set DataPath	
ED.xml	🔲 org.apache.uima.al.ProteinS	equence uima.to	as.Annotation	Add	Wind Leasting Blance	our build an	
SD.xml =	SequenceName	uima.ca	as.String	Edit	Kind Location/Name	-	
	SequenceRaw	uima.ca	as.String	- currin			
				Remove			
D.xml -				Export			
translation and							
A=D.Xml				JCasGen			
TSD ym							
out.xml							
xml							
_							
	2		)	]			
	Overview Type System Source						
					1110		

Figure 30 : An example of a Type System (TS) in AlexSys

ProteinSequenceTS is an object composed of the protein sequence name as well as the sequence itself. UIMA allows the creation of more complex TS, depending on the complexity of the task studied. The TS is stored in XML format and will be used to generate the metadata that will drive the analysis process in AlexSys.

## 10.2.2 AlexSys Analysis Engine Descriptor

UIMA requires that descriptive information about an Analysis Engine be represented in an XML file and provided along with the annotator class file(s) to the UIMA framework at run time. This XML file is called an Analysis Engine Descriptor. The descriptor includes:

- The name, description, version, and vendor (Developer) of the annotator
- The annotator's inputs and outputs, defined in terms of the types in a Type System Descriptor
- Declaration of the configuration parameters that the annotator accepts

The Component Descriptor Editor plugin (Figure 31), which we previously used to edit the Type System Descriptor, can also be used to edit Analysis Engine Descriptors. The Component Descriptor Editor consists of several tabbed pages. The initial page of the Component Descriptor Editor is the Overview page, the other pages are dedicated to the specification of the TS used for the Analysis Engine (AE), the parameters that will be needed, and the capabilities page which provides an interface for the specification of the Input and Output TS for the developed AE. Commentaire [MSOffice19]

Commentaire [MSOffice20]

Commentaire [MSOffice21]

hat's this? You didn't mention it

s this the wizard?

above

? annotator

TestSeePred.java 👔 * RunCP	MAlexSys PfamAED	xml ProteinSe	quence DProteinSequence EProteinSecue 🗙	
Overview				
- Implementation Details			Identification Information	
Implementation Language 🔿 C/C++ 🛞 Java			specifies the basic identification information for this	
Engine Type   Primitive  Aggregate			DroteinSequenceAED	
- Runtime Information			1.0	
This section describes informatio	in about how to run this	Vendor	AlexSys2	
Ø updates the CAS		Description		
C multiple deployment allow				
Outputs new CASes				
Name of the Java class file	org.apache.uima.al.Prote	einSeque		
		Browse		
		TestSeePred	java 👔 * RunCPMAlexSys 🖻 PfamAED.xml 🛛 🖉 ProteinSequence 🛺 ProteinSequence	C ProteinSeque
		Capabilities	: Inputs and Outputs	U []
		- Compone	nt Capabilities	
		This section of	lescribes the languages handled, and the inputs needed and outputs provided in terms of the Types	and Features.
			Name Input Output Name Space	Add Capability Set
		📄 Set		Add Language
verview aggregate Parameters	Parameter Settings Type	Sys		
		Sofas		Add type
		🖂 Type:	ProteinSequence Output on apache.uima.al	Add Sofa
			<all features=""> Output</all>	Add/Edit Features
				Edit
	D			
				Remove
		> Sota Map	pings (Only used in aggregate Descriptors)	

Figure 31 Analysis Engine Descriptor Editor.

The pages in the editor facilitate the specification of the Analysis Engine (AE) properties. Here, (a) the Protein Sequence AE will update the CAS and (b) the Type System will be used as the AE Output.

## 10.2.3 AlexSys Analysis Engine Annotator

The annotator is the part where we implement code. Depending on the task to be treated, the modular organization of different Analysis Engines is a perfect representation of

the Object Oriented programming spirit. After designing a model, UML generally, that describes the whole system picture, when using UIMA, the annotator (core of an Analysis Engine) allow us to write the code that will take as input CASes generated by other Analysis Engines so that to generate new CASes whithout carrying about who will use them after, and this is the real concept behind a data-driven system.

**Commentaire [MSOffice22]** ou mention this above, but don't describe it.

## **10.3 Metadata layer**

The metadata layer in AlexSys contains the "on-the-fly" data that will drive the multiple alignment construction process. It consists of a set of UIMA Type Systems (TS). There are currently six TS designed to represent the major data structures used:

- the Protein Sequence TS contains the basic sequence information
- the Model Attributes TS stores the attribute data associated with the alignment models
- the Pfam TS and Prosite Pattern TS contain information about function domains mapped on the sequences, obtained from the InterPro database ( Separated from Model Attributes TS to enhance the capability of UIMA to gatjer unstructured information from different sources)
- the Arff Analyzed TS contains information about the sequence attributes in Arff (Attribute-Relation File Format)
- the Aligner Predictor TS collects information concerning the aligners, such as the predicted strengths and weaknesses for each aligner and the final choice of an aligner

## 10.4 AlexSys computational core

## 10.4.1 Input data handling (IDH)

When a set of sequences is input to AlexSys, they are transferred to the metadata layer (Protein Sequence TS), using the Protein Sequence AE. This AE uses the framework of the Biojava sequence input/output API to provide access to sequences from a number of common file formats such as FASTA, GenBank and EMBL. Thus, regardless of the input format used, sequences can be simply transformed into UIMA TS, making them easily available to the other AE.

## 10.4.2 Annotation and Information Extraction (AIE)

This Aggregate Analysis Engine (AAE) contains a number of AE that are used to obtain pertinent information associated with the set of input sequences. When new data is stored in the Protein Sequence TS, the Model Attributes AE calculates the sequence attributes required for the selection of an appropriate aligner and stores the information in the Model Attributes TS. The attributes are also read by the Arff Writer AE, which transforms them into a special format called Arff (Attribute-Relation File Format) used by the Aligner Predictor AE to select one or more appropriate aligners for the input sequences.

In addition to the attributes that can be calculated directly from the sequence data, two AE have been defined that extract additional information from external databases. The Pfam AE uses the WSInterProScan web service to retrieve the associated Pfam domains from the InterPro database and maps them to the sequences. The additional information generated is then stored in the Pfam TS. In a similar way, the Prosite Pattern AE maps patterns from the Prosite database to the input sequences.

## 10.4.3 Multiple Alignment Construction (MAC)

The first task in the multiple alignment process is the selection of an appropriate aligner to use. This is performed by the Aligner Predictor AE, which represents the AlexSys inference engine. Based on the attributes associated with the input sequences, the inference engine uses the alignment models in the knowledge base to predict the class (Strong or Weak) of each aligner. Two alternative methods have been developed to make the final selection of the most suitable aligner:

- The first method is based on the probability scores (provided by the Weka software. For each of the five aligners, the probability associated with a Strong prediction is obtained and the aligner with the highest probability is then selected.
- The second method builds a set of IF-THEN rules. Each of the five aligners incorporated in AlexSys is classified as either Strong or Weak. In the case where more than one aligner is classified as Strong, we select the one that requires the least CPU time.

Once an aligner has been selected, a UIMA Flow Controller is used to call the appropriate alignment AE. These AE encapsulate the actual alignment program, accessible via

JNI (Java Native Interface). AlexSys requires that these programs are already installed on the user's platform.

The final architecture is show in Figure 32



Figure 32 : Flat and Layered representation of AlexSys

AlexSys is data driven, thus representing the system as a workflow (A) may alter the concept of data-driven architecture. There are three interconnected layers, the knowledge base layer (B-up), the AlexSys core (B-middle) and the Metadata Layer (B-down)

## **10.5** AlexSys Installation and Usage

AlexSys binaries and source code are available through AlexSys website (http://alnitak.u-strasbg.fr/~aniba/alexsys ).

To install and use AlexSys one should follow these instructions (the Ubuntu operating system is used here as an example)

- 1 Download AlexSys
- 2 The installation is done by double clicking on Alignment\_Expert\_System-1.0-Linuxx86-Install
- 3 Install some necessary external tools :
- 4 Run these command to install software from appropriate repositories

sudo apt-get install clustalw

sudo apt-get install mafft

sudo apt-get install kalign

sudo apt-get install probcons

sudo apt-get install muscle

sudo apt-get install curl

sudo apt-get install tcsh

- 5 Prepare the directory that will contain all protein sequences to align and the directory for the generated multiple alignments (example /home/Input and /home/Output)
- 6 To run AlexSys, use this command with the appropriate options : Java –jar AlexSys-1-1.jar INPUTFOLDER OUTPUTFOLDER OPTIONS OUTFILE

where **OPTIONS** represents two possible arguments:

- "doalignment" performs a multiple alignment
- "noalignment" only predict aligner accuracies

**OUTFILE** is the file that will contain all the alignment construction results, including the features extracted as well as the prediction scores.

Example: java –jar AlexSys-1-1.jar /home/Input /home/Output doalignment /home/log.txt

## Chapter 11

## 11. AlexSys Evaluation

The efficiency and accuracy of the multiple alignment construction process in AlexSys were first evaluated using a test set of 178 multiple alignments (see Materials and Methods). The results of this study are described in detail in Publication No. 2, included in appendix. Alignment accuracy was estimated by comparing the results obtained with AlexSys to the reference alignments in both BAliBASE and OXBench benchmarks. Two alternative approaches, using probability- and rule-based methods, for selecting the most suitable aligner in the AlexSys inference engine were tested here. The probability-based inference engine resulted in higher accuracy, with an average score of 0.891, compared to a score of 0.888 obtained by the rule-based system.

The difference in alignment accuracy can be explained by the background knowledge built into the rules, which favors a shorter running time when more than one aligner is predicted to give a strong performance. In contrast, the probability-based implementation systematically selects the aligner with the highest probability of a strong performance. The performance of these alternative methods was also compared to the five existing aligners run independently. To assess the performance of the aligners used in this study, we used the sumof-pairs score (SP) to compare the alignments produced by the aligner with the reference alignments. The SP score corresponds to the proportion of pairs of residues aligned the same in both alignments.

The results presented above were obtained using, as mentioned above, training and test alignments from the BAliBASE (version 3.0) and OXBench benchmarks. There are two major concerns here that need to be discussed. When we develop a system based on a machine learning approach we should i) supply as many training instances as possible as input to the machine learning algorithm, in order to obtain accurate results and ii) make sure that the input offers a wide range of complex cases covering most classification possibilities. In this

way, the training phase is more likely to result in classifications and predictions that are closer to reality and thus, better mimic the human expert decisions.

## **11.1** Constructing new training and test sets

In our original study, we noticed that the different alignment programs integrated in AlexSys obtained similar SP scores for many of the benchmark alignments, particularly those from the OXBench benchmark. This lead us to think about the accuracy of the decision trees learned. Even if the results shown before clearly demonstrates that we avoid the problem of learning overfitting, we are unable at this point to say whether AlexSys will perform better for more complicated protein alignment cases or not. To address this problem, we decided to enrich the BAliBASE benchmark with larger and more complex reference alignments, in order to observe how AlexSys behaves. The new 'gold standard' alignments were designed to represent some of the new problems resulting from the widespread application of genome sequencing and next generation sequencing technologies. Some of the issues involved in building the benchmark are discussed in Publication No. 3 included in the appendix.

We thus constructed a new BAliBASE reference set (manuscript in preparation) composed of 230 reference alignments, containing a total of 17813 protein sequences. For each family, the reference alignment was constructed using a semi-automatic protocol similar to the one developed for the construction of the BAliBASE (version) alignments. Briefly, potential sequence homologs were detected by PSI-BLAST searches in the Uniprot and PDB databases using a given query sequence. Sequences with known 3D structure were aligned using the SAP 3D superposition program. Sequences with no known 3D structure were initially aligned by (i) identifying the most conserved segments in the PSI-BLAST HSP alignments with the Ballast [282] program and (ii) using these conserved segments as anchors for the progressive multiple alignment strategy implemented in DbClustal [233]. Unrelated sequences were removed from the multiple alignment using the LEON [283] program and the quality of the alignment was evaluated using the NorMD [249] objective function. Finally, structural and functional annotations (including known domains from the Interpro database: www.ebi.ac.uk/interpro/) were added using the multiple alignment information management system (MACSIMS) [275]. The automatic alignment was then manually verified and refined to correct any badly aligned sequences or locally misaligned regions.

**Commentaire [MSOffice24]** here? In the publication? Or in chapter 9?

For each benchmark alignment, we identified the conserved regions, or 'blocks', using an automatic method. This led to the definition of 7985 blocks, covering on average 46% of the total multiple alignment (general statistics are shown in Figure 33).



Figure 33 : General statistics computed for the benchmark alignments.

In the box-and-whisker plots, boxes indicate lower and upper quartiles, and whiskers represent minimum and maximum values

The benchmark alignments reflect some of the problems specific to aligning large sets of complex sequences. For example, many of the protein families (>64% of the alignments) have multi-domain architectures and their members often share only a single domain. In addition, the alignments have a high proportion of partial sequences, corresponding either to naturally occurring variants, or to artifacts, including PDB sequences (typically covering a single structural domain) and proteins translated from partially sequenced genomes or ESTs. The alignment of the highly studied P53/P63/P73 family (Figure 34A) illustrates this notion with 45% of the aligned sequences (61 out of 134) being partial. Further difficulties arise due to the presence of potential gene prediction errors, resulting in erroneous protein sequences with spurious, artificial insertions or deletions. Another important feature of today's multiple alignment task is linked to the distribution of the conserved blocks. In Figure 34A, only 18% of the blocks are present in most (>90%) of the aligned sequences, while 30% are found in

less than 10%. These 'rare' segments or patterns are often characteristic of functional sub-families.



Figure 34 : (A) Reference alignment of representative sequences of the p53/p63/p73 family, with the domain organization shown above the alignment (AD: activation domain, Oligo: oligomerization, SAM: sterile alpha motif). Colored blocks indicate conserved regions. The grey regions correspond to sequence segments that could not be reliably aligned and white regions indicate gaps in the alignment. (B) Different MSA programs produce different alignments, especially in the N-terminal region (boxed in red in A) containing rare motifs and a disordered proline-rich domain.

For each of the 230 reference alignments in the benchmark, we tested the six alignment programs incorporated in AlexSys, resulting in a total of 1380 automatically constructed MSAs. Analysis of the overall alignment quality confirmed previous results, in terms of

program ranking (Figure 35). Probeons achieves the highest scores on average (78.6%), although a large time penalty was incurred. Mafft obtained the next highest average scores (77.7%), with a significant reduction in the time required to produce the alignments. As expected, the methods incorporating both local and global information were generally more accurate than global (ClustalW: 63.1%) or local (Dialign: 72.9%) algorithms alone. These results showed that our new benchmark alignment tests were capable of distinguishing between the existing alignment methods, in terms of alignment accuracy and the CPU time required to perform the texts. Nevertheless, alignment accuracy was observed to be highly variable even for the best programs (with a standard deviation of 18.9 and 19.8 for Mafft and Probcons respectively). We hypothesize that this is due to the greater complexity of the large alignments, resulting from an increased number of multi-domain proteins, as well as the presence of many partial and erroneous sequences.



Figure 35 : Overall alignment performance for each of the MSA programs tested.

(A) Overall alignment quality measured using CS. (B) Total run time for constructing all alignments (a log10 scale is used for display purposes).

We then used the extended BAliBASE benchmark to construct new training and test sets for AlexSys. The new dataset in AlexSys was thus composed of 218 reference alignments from BAliBASE reference sets 1-5, together with the 230 new reference alignments described here. The complete dataset was then divided randomly into 80% for training and 20% for testing the prediction accuracy.

## 11.2 Evaluation of MSA quality and efficiency

After training Random Forest trees for each of the aligners (as described in chapter 9), we then used AlexSys to construct multiple alignments for each test set and compared the results in terms of SP scores and CPU time, with five alignment programs run separately (Dialign was excluded from these tests, as it is time-consuming and the quality of the alignments in previous tests was relatively low). The results are shown in Figure 36



Figure 36 : Evaluation of alignment accuracy and efficiency for AlexSys and the six existing aligners. (A) Average alignment accuracy for the test set, measured using the SP score. (B) The total CPU time required to construct all multiple alignments.

In terms of accuracy, AlexSys (using the probability based implementation), performs better than four out of the five alignment programs run separately, with an SP score of 0.832. Although ProbCons outperforms all the other aligners, aligning the test set requires 5746 minutes, whereas with a slightly lower SP score, AlexSys required only 86 minutes (this time includes the time used to calculate the input sequence attributes and not only the alignment time itself). These results show that AlexSys is capable of automatically choosing an appropriate aligner depending on the informational content of the input data.

To further investigate how AlexSys obtained these results, we compared the SP scores achieved by AlexSys with each separate aligner and represented the results in a set of back-toback barplots (Figure 37). This representation highlights the distribution of test sets by SP scores (from 0 to 1). It can be seen from these comparisons that AlexSys results in less low quality alignments (with SP scores less than the threshold of 0.5).



Figure 37 : Back-To-Back comparison of AlexSys and other MSA programs

Commentaire [MSOffice25] egend



These results, together with the results shown in Figure 36, confirm that AlexSys is capable of producing reliable alignments in a time-scale suitable for projects requiring high throughput processing.

The results obtained here confirm the effectiveness of cooperative alignment approaches that can exploit different methods to obtain more accurate, reliable multiple alignments. Integration of these different algorithmic approaches with new data types, other than the sequence itself, in knowledge-enabled, dynamic systems will facilitate and improve the complete MSA construction and analysis process; from the selection of a suitable set of sequences, via data cleaning and preprocessing, data mining and the evaluation of results, to the final knowledge presentation and visualization. Such systems could then be used to fully exploit the potential of MSAs as models of the underlying evolutionary processes that have created and fashioned extant protein sequences and fine-tuned their structure, function and regulation.

In this work, we have studied a new paradigm to address the problems of data integration and analysis, from their initial collection and transformation to valuable information to the final generation of new knowledge. With the current data torrent resulting from the high throughput genomics technologies, scientists in the field of bioinformatics are facing, not only an increasing volume of data, but the nature and quality of the data are also changing. This introduces additional difficulties for the exploitation of this knowledge in terms of new discoveries and the validation of what we learned in the past.

In the era of systems biology, the combination of the heterogeneous data from many different resources, coupled with comparative and predictive analyses, has become a crucial element for the analysis and comprehension of complex biological networks. In this context, gene sequences can no longer be considered in isolation, but must be integrated with other genomics data to provide more detailed descriptions of their functions, not only at the molecular level, but also at the higher levels of their macromolecular complexes and cellular processes.

In the face of these challenges, we need novel approaches that introduce additional capabilities in the diverse traditional algorithms we already possess, to bring a kind of "artificial life" to these applications. Fortunately, new technologies in the machine learning and artificial intelligence fields have been developed recently to allow this. Many of these techniques have been inspired by biology (e.g. neural networks, genetic algorithms) and vice versa (e.g. data mining, cluster analysis, pattern recognition, knowledge representation). This crossing over is giving rise to new cutting edge technologies that are used today as standards in the process of knowledge discovery in a wide variety of fields. Bioinformaticians are now taking into consideration these novel aspects, by creating tools that mimic human intelligence in order to deal with the data torrents both accurately and efficiently.

Here, we have studied the applicability of a knowledge based expert system approach, that emphasizes the modeling and integration of human expertise in computational systems that can thus act as additional "problem solvers", together with scientists. The goal is not the development of "yet another program", but the creation of a system that can take into account the strengths and weaknesses of different, complementary bioinformatics applications. Such an expert system would not follow a predefined analysis pipeline, but would include the

nature of the data (more precisely meta-data) in the choice of a specific analysis process. This data driven architecture has the advantage of allowing the deployment of different analysis scenarios, depending on the input data and the analysis problem.

In this thesis, after describing in detail the fundamentals of knowledge based expert systems, we introduced AlexSys, a novel application of knowledge discovery through knowledge based expert systems applied to bioinformatics. My previous experience as a bioinformatician and my interest in knowledge discovery in the biology field led me to discover a new generation of bioinformatics software with an incredible range of potential applications. In particular, I was interested in the application of such technologies to the multiple sequence alignment problem, because of its important central role in most bioinformatics applications today, and the challenges that this field faces, from a developer point of view more than a user's.

What was more exciting during this thesis, and what I will try to describe in this section, is the fascinating idea of extrapolation and scaling in science. I was engaged in discussions that by far exceed the specific problems and solutions discussed here. When we applied knowledge based expert systems to the multiple sequence alignment problem, we also treated lots of fundamental questions in bioinformatics and we "blackboarded" the limits and the strengths of such methodologies. In this section I will try to resume what we learnt during this thesis, in order to provide some directions for future developments and perspectives.

## Framework choice for the development of the Knowledge Based System

In order to build the AlexSys expert system, we used the UIMA (Unstructured Information Management Architecture). UIMA represents an ideal framework for the integration of both structured and unstructured data. It also provides unique facilities for the creation of highly modular computational systems capable of performing complex analysis applications. In the future, this will allow us to combine information from complementary alignment methods, for example to produce a single consensus alignment. The system will also allow the integration of structural and functional data, such as gene expression, cellular localization, interactions, etc., to guide the construction of the multiple alignment and to facilitate the interpretation of the results for the biologist.

The use of UIMA as a framework for the development of our knowledge based system opens the way for the integration of new methods dedicated to the analysis of biological literature and the extraction of the knowledge in a format that can be exploited by the computer. A growing number of groups, such as BioNLP (bionlp.sourceforge.net) and BioCreative (www.biocreative.org), are developing and using text mining applications on biological literature, in order to complement existing studies or to establish entirely new analysis based on knowledge discovery in texts.

# Taking into account the alignment context: knowledge enhancement

Although the knowledge currently selected and implemented in AlexSys provides accurate results in many cases, we have to keep in mind the alignment context and the final purpose of the user. For example, constructing a multiple sequence alignment for annotation purposes is different from constructing one for 3D structure homology modeling. In some cases we can accept an alignment that is "approximate" with many badly placed gaps for example. In other cases this type of alignment might not be helpful, nor meaningful. A question then arises concerning the objective functions used in the MSA context. Are they as objective as they seem to be? With the rapid growth of the known protein universe, and thus the expected low coverage of multiple alignment benchmarks, we can question the accuracy of existing multiple sequence alignment algorithms and approaches, not in a critical way, but in order to anticipate solutions and reduce the complexity of aligning protein sequences. Such MSA algorithm studies provide lots of information about the factors that affect alignment quality. Some of this prior knowledge has already been quantified and incorporated in the AlexSys inference engine. Some examples of other information that could be incorporated in the future are given below.

The accuracy of multiple sequence alignment programs is closely linked to sequence conservation. It has been widely established that alignment accuracy dramatically decreases for sequences sharing less than 30% identity [263]. Other factors affecting the accuracy have been less well studied. Here, we have described a number of sequence attributes that have an effect on the quality of one or more of the alignment programs tested, including the number of sequences, their lengths and their structural and amino acid compositions.

The multiple alignment of multi-domain proteins is a particularly difficult task. Evolutionary events that alter the domain organization of the input protein sequences represent significant problems for alignment algorithms. In particular, global approaches cannot cope with permuted domain orders and normally use strict gap penalties that make it difficult to insert long gaps equivalent to the length of more than one protein domain. Local multiple alignment methods, such as the Dialign approach, can be useful in such cases.

MSA accuracy could also be seriously affected by the presence of repeats in protein sequences. Sammeth and Heringa, developed an MSA technique that keeps track of various types of repeat regions, using specific algorithms for the detection of these repeats. The alignment accuracy can be significantly improved by this method, although it is strongly correlated to the repeat information provided [284].

Another problematic class of proteins is the membrane-associated proteins. The specific regions in these proteins which are inserted in the cell membrane present a significantly different hydrophobicity pattern compared to soluble proteins. Since the scoring matrices (e.g., PAM or BLOSUM) generally employed in MSA approaches are produced from alignments of sequences of soluble proteins, the general alignment methods are in theory unsuitable for the alignment of membrane bound protein regions. Fortunately, transmembrane (TM) regions can be reliably identified using prediction strategies such as TMHMM [285] or Phobius [286]. These methods could be incorporated in an alignment expert system, to locate the putative TM regions in the sequences and to align them separately from the remainder of the sequence.

## Alignment algorithm integration

The current version of AlexSys includes some of the most widely used multiple alignment programs representing different, complementary alignment strategies. However, this is clearly not an exhaustive list of the hundreds of alignment programs currently available. The modular design of AlexSys allows developers to create additional plugins for the integration of additional alignment algorithms. The inclusion of new algorithms however requires the revision of the included prediction models in order to take into account the newly added algorithm. As described in the Results section, adding an aligner is quite easy using UIMA, all we have to do is to create the appropriate Analysis Engine and to slightly modify the inference engine. Including additional aligners is expected to improve the accuracy of the

alignment in respect to the input attributes. Furthermore, the MSA field is constantly evolving, with new methods being developed in response to new alignment applications and changing user requirements.

## **Multiple Alignment Program parameters**

Prior to this thesis work, I was involved in a study aimed at the optimization of the ClustalW progressive algorithm. However, as far as we know, there has been no comprehensive study of other multiple sequence alignment programs to try to establish a relationship between the nature of the sequences to be aligned and the optimal program parameters. A trial was made during the development of AlexSys (not yet fully implemented), and it was shown that optimizing a program's parameters based on a benchmark covering a wide range of protein families, could improve the accuracy of the final alignment compared to the parameter values used by default.

One important parameter is the substitution matrix used to define the scores for matching and mismatching residues in the alignment. The PAM [239] and Blosum [287] matrices are amongst the most widely used for protein alignments. A general rule states that high PAM values or low Blosum values are advised for sequences with increasingly divergent sequences, whereas the opposite case is recommended for more related sequences. Similarly, the penalties associated with introducing gaps are an important component of algorithms for protein sequence alignment: the larger the gap penalties, the smaller the number of gaps that can be inserted in the alignment. Sequences that have evolved over long periods of time tend to have more insertions and deletions and as a consequence, it can be beneficial to reduce the gap penalty values for more divergent sequence sets. Nevertheless, attention should be paid not to deviate too far from the advised configuration. Too large gap penalty values may impose a gap-less alignment, while too low gap penalties may result in alignments with too many gaps. In both cases, the final alignment will probably be biologically inaccurate.

An expert system should be able to detect automatically which program parameters to use depending on the input sequences. Including this information as prior knowledge in an expert system, e.g. in the form of Inductive Logic rules, decision trees, etc., is expected to improve the final alignment results. At the current stage of AlexSys development, this kind of parameter optimization could be achieved in two ways. First, we could consider the aligner parameters (at least the common ones) as new classes in the existing model, in order to predict

the most appropriate aligner and parameters at the same time. Second, we could build a separate inference engine that would be exploited after the initial choice of the appropriate aligner, in order to subsequently predict which parameters should be used for the input sequence set. In this case, we could prediction models that are specific to each aligner.



## **AlexSys additional features**

Figure 38 : AlexSys future infrastructure enhancement

The core of AlexSys currently consists of 3 layers: the input data handling, the annotation and information extraction, and the multiple alignment construction. In the future, more complex analysis protocols could be devised, such as the one shown in Figure 38.

In its current version, AlexSys systematically produces a multiple alignment, regardless of whether the input sequences are actually related and can be aligned meaningfully. However, the rules implemented in the inference engine could be used as a preliminary filter that would provide a failure prediction before the alignment process is started in the AlexSys core. If the sequences given to the system are considered to be "alignable" then the expert system can be used to select an appropriate alignment methodology and to construct an initial alignment.

Further improvement could be obtained by iteratively refining this initial alignment, using either existing alignment refinement strategies or by implementing new modules based, for example, on the metadata generated during the analysis. The long term objective is the

development of more robust versions of AlexSys. This could be achieved by enriching the knowledge base with new data that could be exploited by complementary algorithms in AlexSys. Nevertheless, manual curation of the raw data by experts will be crucial in order to eliminate erroneous or noisy data.

## **AlexSys in the Clouds**

During the development of AlexSys, when our ideas were confronted with the reality of biological datasets, we sometimes felt frustrated that we could not reach our ideals. However, this is often the case when dealing with high throughput data. We need a lot of CPU and memory resources to run our programs in an acceptable time frame. Fortunately a number of alternatives exist to overcome these problems. During the initial development of AlexSys, we applied the system, as described in the Results section, on benchmark sequences from BaliBase or Oxbench, for training and for testing. The sequence sets from these benchmarks are relatively small and can be handled in a reasonable time. A validation phase using larger sequence sets (the next version of BAliBASE and other sequences from genome-scale projects in the laboratory) highlighted some limitations of AlexSys. The time required to extract features and attributes, as well as the alignment itself was acceptable. The only problem that we faced during this validation phase was the calculation of the mean pairwise identity attribute, since this still relies on dynamic programming and the computation time increases exponentially with the number of sequences to be aligned. That said, the tools used for AlexSys development provide a key answer to the problem. The use of UIMA makes it easy to parallelize any analysis process, and thanks to the modular design we can assign each analysis engine to a dedicated node in a parallel computer system, Grid system or Cloud Computing system.

The LBGI is currently implicated in the development of original data management and analysis systems for the Décrypthon Grid infrastructure: a joint project of the French Muscular Dystophy Association (AFM), the CNRS and IBM. We therefore plan to implement AlexSys on this Grid system in the near future.

One of the most widely used Cloud Computing systems in biology is the Amazon EC2 cloud. Many common biological databases are already uploaded onto Amazon, making it simpler and less expensive to use this service. For example, the entire BioLinux suite of tools is available as an image, which means that users can get up and running quickly. Recently,

**Commentaire [MSOffice26]** his is what should be in the results section?
## **Conclusions and perspectives**

some methods for sequence alignment have also been made available for "aligning in the clouds" (Cloud-Coffee [288], XMPP [289])

Through the appropriate selection of acceleration technology the demanding job of keeping up with the analysis of data from high throughput projects can be accomplished at a reasonable cost and without requiring enormous in-house resources. Hopefully, the development of new faster, more accurate sequence alignment and analysis tools will also have significant consequences for more wide-reaching areas, such as protein engineering, metabolic modelling, genetic studies of human disease susceptibility, and the development of new drug discovery strategies.

## References

1. Wriston WB. 'Comments on The Twilight of Sovereignty: How the Information Revolution Is Transforming Our World.', 1992; *Marketplace, American Public Media*.

2. Shannon C. A mathematical theory of communication, Bell System Technical Journal 1948.

3. Szajna B. Determining information system usage: some issues and examples, Information and Management 1993;25

4. Floridi L. Information: A Very Short Introduction Oxford University press 2010.

5. Hagen JB. The origins of bioinformatics, Nature Reviews Genetics 2000;1:231-236.

6. Hofacker IL. RNAs everywhere: genome-wide annotation of structured RNAs, Genome Inform 2006;17:281-282.

7. Meyer IM. A practical guide to the art of RNA gene prediction, Brief Bioinform 2007;8:396-414.

8. Mathe C, Sagot, M. F., Schiex, T. and Rouze, P. Current methods of gene prediction, their strengths and weaknesses, Nucleic Acids Res 2002;30:4103-4117.

9. Azad RK, Borodovsky, M. Probabilistic methods of identifying genes in prokaryotic genomes: connections to the HMM theory, Brief Bioinform 2004;5:118-130.

 Burge C, Karlin, S. Prediction of complete gene structures in human genomic DNA, J Mol Biol 1997;268:78-94.

11. Zhang C, Chen, K., Seldin, M.F. and Li, H. A hidden Markov modeling approach for admixture mapping based on case-control data., Genet Epidemiol. 2004;27:225-239.

12. Turner FS, Clutterbuck, D.R. and Semple, C.A. POCUS: mining genomic sequence annotation to predict disease genes, Genome Biol 2003;4:R75.

13. Zhang L, Pavlovic, V., Cantor, C.R. and Kasif, S. Human-mouse gene identification by comparative evidence integration and evolutionary analysis, Genome Res 2003;13:1190-1202.

 Foissac S, Schiex, T. Integrating alternative splicing detection into gene prediction, BMC Bioinformatics 2005;6:25.

15. Gemund C, Ramu, C., Altenberg-Greulich, B. and Gibson, T.J. Gene2EST: a BLAST2 server for searching expressed sequence tag (EST) databases with eukaryotic gene-sized queries, Nucleic Acids Res 2001;29:1272-1277.

16. Baxevanis AD, Ouellette, B.F.F. Bioinformatics: A Practical Guide to the Analysis of Genes and Proteins, John Wiley & Sons, NY. (1X, red) 2005.

17. Hunter S, Apweiler, R., Attwood, T.K., Bairoch, A., Bateman, A., Binns, D., Bork, P., Das, U., Daugherty, L., Duquenne, L., Finn, R.D., Gough, J., Haft, D., Hulo, N., Kahn, D., Kelly, E., Laugraud, A., Letunic, I., Lonsdale, D., Lopez, R., Madera, M., Maslen, J., McAnulla, C., McDowall, J., Mistry, J., Mitchell, A., Mulder, N., Natale, D., Orengo, C., Quinn, A.F., Selengut, J.D., Sigrist, C.J., Thimma, M., Thomas, P.D., Valentin, F., Wilson, D., Wu, C.H. and Yeats, C. InterPro: the integrative protein signature database, Nucleic Acids Res. 2009 37:D211-215.

18. Marchler-Bauer A, Anderson, J.B., Chitsaz, F., Derbyshire, M.K., DeWeese-Scott, C., Fong, J.H., Geer, L.Y.; Geer, R.C., Gonzales, N.R., Gwadz, M., He, S., Hurwitz, D.I., Jackson, J.D., Ke, Z., Lanczycki, C.J., Liebert, C.A., Liu, C., Lu, F., Lu, S., Marchler, G.H., Mullokandov, M., Song, J.S., Tasneem, A., Thanki, N., Yamashita, R.A., Zhang, D., Zhang, N. and Bryant, S.H. CDD: specific functional annotation with the Conserved Domain Database, Nucleic Acids Res 2009;37:D205-210.

19. Tatusov RL, Natale, D.A., Garkavtsev, I.V., Tatusova, T.A., Shankavaram, U.T., Rao, B.S., Kiryutin, B., Galperin, M.Y., Fedorova, N.D. and Koonin, E.V. The COG database: new developments in phylogenetic classification of proteins from complete genomes, Nucleic Acids Res 2001;29:22-28.

20. Lee D, Redfern, O. and Orengo, C. Predicting protein function from sequence and structure, Nature Reviews Molecular Cell Biology 2007;8:995-1005

21. Altschul SF, Madden TL, Schaffer AA et al. Gapped BLAST and PSI-BLAST: a new generation of protein database search programs, Nucleic Acids Res 1997;25:3389-3402.

22. Rost B, Liu, J., Nair, R., Wrzeszczynski, K.O. and Ofran, Y. Automatic prediction of protein function, Cell Mol Life Sci 2003;60:2637-2650.

Rost B. Enzyme function less conserved than anticipated, J Mol Biol 2002;318:595-608.

24. Bork P. Powers and pitfalls in sequence analysis: the 70% hurdle, Genome Res 2000;10:398-400.

25. Gilks WR, Audit, B., De Angelis, D., Tsoka, S. and Ouzounis, C.A. Modeling the percolation of annotation errors in a database of protein sequences, Bioinformatics 2002;18:1641-1649.

26. Thompson JD, Poch, O. Multiple sequence alignment as a workbench for molecular systems biology., Current Bioinformatics. **2006**;1:95-104.

27. Friedberg I. Automated protein function prediction--the genomic challenge, Brief Bioinform 2006;7:225-242.

Hulo N, Bairoch, A., Bulliard, V., Cerutti, L., Cuche, B.A., de Castro, E., Lachaize,
C., Langendijk-Genevaux, P.S. and Sigrist, C.J. The 20 years of PROSITE, Nucleic Acids
Res 2008;36:D245-249.

29. Henikoff JG, Greene, E.A., Pietrokovski, S. and Henikoff, S. Increased coverage of protein families with the blocks database servers, Nucleic Acids Res 2000;28:228-230.

30. Attwood TK, Blythe, M. J., Flower, D. R., Gaulton, A., Mabey, J. E., Maudling, N., McGregor, L., Mitchell, A. L., Moulton, G., Paine, K. and Scordis, P. PRINTS and PRINTS-S shed light on protein ancestry, Nucleic Acids Res 2002;30:239-241.

31. Berman HM, Westbrook, J., Feng, Z., Gilliland, G., Bhat, T. N., Weissig, H., Shindyalov, I. N. and Bourne, P. E. The Protein Data Bank, Nucleic Acids Res 2000;28:235-242.

32. Orengo CA, Michie, A.D., Jones, S., Jones, D.T., Swindells, M.B. and Thornton, J.M. CATH--a hierarchic classification of protein domain structures, Structure 1997;5:1093-1108.

Andreeva A, Howorth, D., Chandonia, J. M., Brenner, S. E., Hubbard, T. J., Chothia,
C. and Murzin, A. G. Data growth and its impact on the SCOP database: new developments,
Nucleic Acids Res 2008;36:D419-425.

34. Bonneau R, Baker, D. Ab initio protein structure prediction: progress and prospects, Annu Rev Biophys Biomol Struct 2001;30:173-189.

35. Li H, Coghlan, A., Ruan, J., Coin, L. J., Heriche, J. K., Osmotherly, L., Li, R., Liu, T., Zhang, Z., Bolund, L., Wong, G. K., Zheng, W., Dehal, P., Wang, J. and Durbin, R. TreeFam: a curated database of phylogenetic trees of animal gene families, Nucleic Acids Res 2006;34:D572-580.

36. Ruan J, Li, H., Chen, Z., Coghlan, A., Coin, L. J., Guo, Y., Heriche, J. K., Hu, Y., Kristiansen, K., Li, R., Liu, T., Moses, A., Qin, J., Vang, S., Vilella, A. J., Ureta-Vidal, A., Bolund, L., Wang, J. and Durbin, R. TreeFam: 2008 Update, Nucleic Acids Res 2008;36:D735-740.

37. Huerta-Cepas J, Bueno, A., Dopazo, J. and Gabaldon, T. PhylomeDB: a database for genome-wide collections of gene phylogenies, Nucleic Acids Res 2008;36:D491-496.

 Page RD. TBMap: a taxonomic perspective on the phylogenetic database TreeBASE, BMC Bioinformatics 2007;8:158.

39. Lander ES, Linton, L.M., Birren, B., Nusbaum, C., Zody, M.C., Baldwin, J., Devon, K., Dewar, K., Doyle, M., FitzHugh, W., Funke, R., Gage, D., Harris, K., Heaford, A., Howland, J., Kann, L., Lehoczky, J., LeVine, R., McEwan, P., McKernan, K., Meldrim, J., Mesirov, J.P., Miranda, C., Morris, W., Naylor, J., Raymond, C., Rosetti, M., Santos, R., Sheridan, A., Sougnez, C., Stange-Thomann, N., Stojanovic, N., Subramanian, A., Wyman, D., Rogers, J., Sulston, J., Ainscough, R., Beck, S., Bentley, D., Burton, J., Clee, C., Carter, N., Coulson, A., Deadman, R., Deloukas, P., Dunham, A., Dunham, I., Durbin, R., French, L., Grafham, D., Gregory, S., Hubbard, T., Humphray, S., Hunt, A., Jones, M., Lloyd, C., McMurray, A., Matthews, L., Mercer, S., Milne, S., Mullikin, J. C., Mungall, A., Plumb, R., Ross, M., Shownkeen, R., Sims, S., Waterston, R.H., Wilson, R.K., Hillier, L.W., McPherson, J.D., Marra, M.A., Mardis, E.R., Fulton, L.A., Chinwalla, A.T., Pepin, K.H., Gish, W.R., Chissoe, S.L., Wendl, M.C., Delehaunty, K.D., Miner, T.L., Delehaunty, A., Kramer, J.B., Cook, L.L., Fulton, R.S., Johnson, D.L., Minx, P.J., Clifton, S.W., Hawkins, T., Branscomb, E., Predki, P., Richardson, P., Wenning, S., Slezak, T., Doggett, N., Cheng, J.F., Olsen, A.,

Lucas, S., Elkin, C., Uberbacher, E., Frazier, M., Gibbs, R.A., Muzny, D.M., Scherer, S.E., Bouck, J.B., Sodergren, E.J., Worley, K.C., Rives, C.M., Gorrell, J.H., Metzker, M.L., Naylor, S.L., Kucherlapati, R.S., Nelson, D. L., Weinstock, G.M., Sakaki, Y., Fujiyama, A., Hattori, M., Yada, T., Toyoda, A., Itoh, T., Kawagoe, C., Watanabe, H., Totoki, Y., Taylor, T., Weissenbach, J., Heilig, R., Saurin, W., Artiguenave, F., Brottier, P., Bruls, T., Pelletier, E., Robert, C., Wincker, P., Smith, D.R., Doucette-Stamm, L., Rubenfield, M., Weinstock, K., Lee, H.M., Dubois, J., Rosenthal, A., Platzer, M., Nyakatura, G., Taudien, S., Rump, A., Yang, H., Yu, J., Wang, J., Huang, G., Gu, J., Hood, L., Rowen, L., Madan, A., Qin, S., Davis, R.W., Federspiel, N.A., Abola, A.P., Proctor, M.J., Myers, R.M., Schmutz, J., Dickson, M., Grimwood, J., Cox, D. R., Olson, M.V., Kaul, R., Shimizu, N., Kawasaki, K., Minoshima, S., Evans, G.A., Athanasiou, M., Schultz, R., Roe, B.A., Chen, F., Pan, H., Ramser, J., Lehrach, H., Reinhardt, R., McCombie, W.R., de la Bastide, M., Dedhia, N., Blocker, H., Hornischer, K., Nordsiek, G., Agarwala, R., Aravind, L., Bailey, J.A., Bateman, A., Batzoglou, S., Birney, E., Bork, P., Brown, D.G., Burge, C.B., Cerutti, L., Chen, H.C., Church, D., Clamp, M., Copley, R.R., Doerks, T., Eddy, S.R., Eichler, E.E., Furey, T.S., Galagan, J., Gilbert, J.G., Harmon, C., Hayashizaki, Y., Haussler, D., Hermjakob, H., Hokamp, K., Jang, W., Johnson, L.S., Jones, T.A., Kasif, S., Kaspryzk, A., Kennedy, S., Kent, W.J., Kitts, P., Koonin, E.V., Korf, I., Kulp, D., Lancet, D., Lowe, T.M., McLysaght, A., Mikkelsen, T., Moran, J.V., Mulder, N., Pollara, V.J., Ponting, C.P., Schuler, G., Schultz, J., Slater, G., Smit, A.F., Stupka, E., Szustakowski, J., Thierry-Mieg, D., Thierry-Mieg, J., Wagner, L., Wallis, J., Wheeler, R., Williams, A., Wolf, Y. I., Wolfe, K.H., Yang, S.P., Yeh, R.F., Collins, F., Guyer, M.S., Peterson, J., Felsenfeld, A., Wetterstrand, K.A., Patrinos, A., Morgan, M.J., de Jong, P., Catanese, J.J., Osoegawa, K., Shizuya, H., Choi, S. and Chen, Y.J. Initial sequencing and analysis of the human genome, Nature 2001;409:860-921.

40. Liolios K, Chen, I. M., Mavromatis, K., Tavernarakis, N., Hugenholtz, P., Markowitz, V. M. and Kyrpides, N. C. The Genomes On Line Database (GOLD) in 2009: status of genomic and metagenomic projects and their associated metadata, Nucleic Acids Res 2009;38:D346-354.

41. Benson DA, Karsch-Mizrachi, I., Lipman, D. J., Ostell, J. and Wheeler, D. L. GenBank, Nucleic Acids Res 2007;35:D21-25.

42. Kulikova T, Akhtar, R., Aldebert, P., Althorpe, N., Andersson, M., Baldwin, A., Bates, K., Bhattacharyya, S., Bower, L., Browne, P., Castro, M., Cochrane, G., Duggan, K.,

Eberhardt, R., Faruque, N., Hoad, G., Kanz, C., Lee, C., Leinonen, R., Lin, Q., Lombard, V., Lopez, R., Lorenc, D., McWilliam, H., Mukherjee, G., Nardone, F., Pastor, M.P., Plaister, S., Sobhany, S., Stoehr, P., Vaughan, R., Wu, D., Zhu, W. and Apweiler, R. EMBL Nucleotide Sequence Database in 2006, Nucleic Acids Res 2007;35:D16-20.

43. Okubo K, Sugawara, H., Gojobori, T. and Tateno, Y. DDBJ in preparation for overview of research activities behind data submissions, Nucleic Acids Res 2006;34:D6-9.

44. Ideker T, Galitski, T. and Hood, L. A new approach to decoding life: systems biology, Annu Rev Genomics Hum Genet 2001;2:343-372.

45. Kitano H. Systems biology: a brief overview, Science 2002;295:1662-1664.

46. Chong LD, Ray, L.B. Reproductive Biology, Science 2002.

47. Barrett T, Troup, D. B., Wilhite, S. E., Ledoux, P., Rudnev, D., Evangelista, C., Kim, I. F., Soboleva, A., Tomashevsky, M., Marshall, K. A., Phillippy, K. H., Sherman, P. M., Muertter, R. N. and Edgar, R. NCBI GEO: archive for high-throughput functional genomic data, Nucleic Acids Res 2009;37:D885-890.

48. Rocca-Serra P, Brazma, A., Parkinson, H., Sarkans, U., Shojatalab, M., Contrino, S., Vilo, J., Abeygunawardena, N., Mukherjee, G., Holloway, E., Kapushesky, M., Kemmeren, P., Lara, G.G., Oezcimen, A. and Sansone, S.A. ArrayExpress: a public database of gene expression data at EBI, C R Biol 2003;326:1075-1078.

49. Ness SA. Basic microarray analysis: strategies for successful experiments, Methods Mol Biol 2006;316:13-33.

50. Quackenbush J. Extracting meaning from functional genomics experiments, Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 2005;207:195-199.

51. Zhang Y, Szustakowski, J. and Schinke, M. Bioinformatics analysis of microarray data, Methods Mol Biol 2009;573:259-284.

52. Vizcaino JA, Cote, R., Reisinger, F., Barsnes, H., Foster, J.M., Rameseder, J., Hermjakob, H. and Martens, L. The Proteomics Identifications database: 2010 update, Nucleic Acids Res 2010;38:D736-742.

53. Deutsch EW, Lam, H. and Aebersold, R. PeptideAtlas: a resource for target selection for emerging targeted proteomics workflows, EMBO Rep 2008;9:429-434.

54. Gasteiger E, Gattiker, A., Hoogland, C., Ivanyi, I., Appel, R.D. and Bairoch, A. ExPASy: The proteomics server for in-depth protein knowledge and analysis, Nucleic Acids Res 2003;31:3784-3788.

55. Kreeger PK, Lauffenburger, D.A. Cancer systems biology: a network modeling perspective, Carcinogenesis 2010;31:2-8.

56. Legrain P, Selig, L. Genome-wide protein interaction maps using two-hybrid systems, FEBS Lett 2000;480:32-36.

57. Kann MG. Protein interactions and disease: computational approaches to uncover the etiology of diseases, Brief Bioinform 2007;8:333-346.

58. Sato T, Yamanishi, Y., Kanehisa, M. and Toh, H. The inference of protein-protein interactions by co-evolutionary analysis is improved by excluding the information about the phylogenetic relationships, Bioinformatics 2005;21:3482-3489.

59. Butland G, Peregrin-Alvarez, J.M., Li, J., Yang, W., Yang, X., Canadien, V., Starostine, A., Richards, D., Beattie, B., Krogan, N., Davey, M., Parkinson, J., Greenblatt, J. and Emili, A. Interaction network containing conserved and essential protein complexes in Escherichia coli, Nature 2005;433:531-537.

60. Busler VJ, Torres, V.J., McClain, M.S., Tirado, O., Friedman, D.B. and Cover, T.L. Protein-Protein Interactions among Helicobacter pylori Cag Proteins Journal of Bacteriology 2006;188:4787-4800.

61. LaCount DJ, Vignali, M., Chettier, R., Phansalkar, A., Bell, R., Hesselberth, J. R., Schoenfeld, L.W., Ota, I., Sahasrabudhe, S., Kurschner, C., Fields, S. and Hughes, R.E. A protein interaction network of the malaria parasite Plasmodium falciparum, Nature 2005;438:103-107.

62. Nandy SK, Jouhten, P. and Nielsen, J. Reconstruction of the yeast protein-protein interaction network involved in nutrient sensing and global metabolic regulation, BMC Syst Biol 2010;4:68.

63. Giot L, Bader J.S., Brouwer, C., Chaudhuri, A., Kuang, B., Li, Y., Hao, Y.L., Ooi, C.E., Godwin, B., Vitols, E., Vijayadamodar, G., Pochart, P., Machineni, H., Welsh, M., Kong, Y., Zerhusen, B., Malcolm, R., Varrone, Z., Collis, A., Minto, M., Burgess, S., McDaniel, L., Stimpson, E., Spriggs, F., Williams, J., Neurath, K., Ioime, N., Agee, M., Voss,

E., Furtak, K., Renzulli, R., Aanensen, N., Carrolla, S., Bickelhaupt, E., Lazovatsky, Y., DaSilva, A., Zhong, J., Stanyon, C.A., Finley, R.L. Jr., White, K.P., Braverman, M., Jarvie, T., Gold, S., Leach, M., Knight, J., Shimkets, R.A., McKenna, M.P., Chant, J. and Rothberg, J.M. A protein interaction map of Drosophila melanogaster, Science 2003;302:1727-1736.

64. Li S, Armstrong, C. M., Bertin, N., Ge, H., Milstein, S., Boxem, M., Vidalain, P.O., Han, J. D., Chesneau, A., Hao, T., Goldberg, D.S., Li, N., Martinez, M., Rual, J.F., Lamesch, P., Xu, L., Tewari, M., Wong, S.L., Zhang, L.V., Berriz, G.F., Jacotot, L., Vaglio, P., Reboul, J., Hirozane-Kishikawa, T., Li, Q., Gabel, H.W., Elewa, A., Baumgartner, B., Rose, D.J., Yu, H., Bosak, S., Sequerra, R., Fraser, A., Mango, S.E., Saxton, W.M., Strome, S., Van Den Heuvel, S., Piano, F., Vandenhaute, J., Sardet, C., Gerstein, M., Doucette-Stamm, L., Gunsalus, K.C., Harper, J.W., Cusick, M.E., Roth, F.P., Hill, D.E. and Vidal, M. A map of the interactome network of the metazoan C. elegans, Science 2004;303:540-543.

65. Stelzl U, Worm, U., Lalowski, M., Haenig, C., Brembeck, F.H., Goehler, H., Stroedicke, M., Zenkner, M., Schoenherr, A., Koeppen, S., Timm, J., Mintzlaff, S., Abraham, C., Bock, N., Kietzmann, S., Goedde, A., Toksoz, E., Droege, A., Krobitsch, S., Korn, B., Birchmeier, W., Lehrach, H. and Wanker, E.E. A human protein-protein interaction network: a resource for annotating the proteome, Cell 2005;122:957-968.

66. Turanalp ME, Can, T. Discovering functional interaction patterns in protein-protein interaction networks, BMC Bioinformatics 2008;9:276.

67. Salwinski L, Miller, C. S., Smith, A.J., Pettit, F.K., Bowie, J.U. and Eisenberg, D. The Database of Interacting Proteins: 2004 update, Nucleic Acids Res 2004;32:D449-451.

68. Kerrien S, Alam-Faruque, Y., Aranda, B., Bancarz, I., Bridge, A., Derow, C., Dimmer, E., Feuermann, M., Friedrichsen, A., Huntley, R., Kohler, C., Khadake, J., Leroy, C., Liban, A., Lieftink, C., Montecchi-Palazzi, L., Orchard, S., Risse, J., Robbe, K., Roechert, B., Thorneycroft, D., Zhang, Y., Apweiler, R. and Hermjakob, H. IntAct-open source resource for molecular interaction data, Nucleic Acids Res 2007;35:D561-565.

69. von Mering C, Jensen, L.J., Kuhn, M., Chaffron, S., Doerks, T., Kruger, B., Snel, B. and Bork, P. STRING 7--recent developments in the integration and prediction of protein interactions, Nucleic Acids Res 2007;35:D358-362.

70. Kell DB. Metabolomics and systems biology: making sense of the soup, Curr Opin Microbiol 2004;7:296-307.

71. Joyce AR, Palsson, B.O. The model organism as a system: integrating 'omics' data sets, Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 2006;7:198-210.

72. Bianchetti L, Thompson, J.D., Lecompte, O., Plewniak, F. and Poch, O. vALId: validation of protein sequence quality based on multiple alignment data, J Bioinform Comput Biol 2005;3:929-947.

73. Lundin D, Torrents, E., Poole, A. M. and Sjoberg, B. M. RNRdb, a curated database of the universal enzyme family ribonucleotide reductase, reveals a high level of misannotation in sequences deposited to Genbank, BMC Genomics 2009;10:589.

74. Kersey PJ, Lawson, D., Birney, E., Derwent, P.S., Haimel, M., Herrero, J., Keenan, S., Kerhornou, A., Koscielny, G., Kahari, A., Kinsella, R.J., Kulesha, E., Maheswari, U., Megy, K., Nuhn, M., Proctor, G., Staines, D., Valentin, F., Vilella, A.J., Yates, A. Ensembl Genomes: extending Ensembl across the taxonomic space, Nucleic Acids Res 2010;38:D563-569.

75. Boeckmann B, Bairoch, A., Apweiler, R., Blatter, M. C., Estreicher, A., Gasteiger, E., Martin, M. J., Michoud, K., O'Donovan, C., Phan, I., Pilbout, S. and Schneider, M. The SWISS-PROT protein knowledgebase and its supplement TrEMBL in 2003, Nucleic Acids Res 2003;31:365-370.

76. Pruitt KD, Maglott, D.R. RefSeq and LocusLink: NCBI gene-centered resources, Nucleic Acids Res 2001;29:137-140.

77. Costanzo MC, Hogan, J. D., Cusick, M. E., Davis, B. P., Fancher, A. M., Hodges, P. E., Kondu, P., Lengieza, C., Lew-Smith, J. E., Lingner, C., Roberg-Perez, K. J., Tillberg, M., Brooks, J. E. and Garrels, J. I. The yeast proteome database (YPD) and Caenorhabditis elegans proteome database (WormPD): comprehensive resources for the organization and comparison of model organism protein information, Nucleic Acids Res 2000;28:73-76.

Costanzo MC, Crawford, M. E., Hirschman, J. E., Kranz, J. E., Olsen, P., Robertson,
L. S., Skrzypek, M. S., Braun, B. R., Hopkins, K. L., Kondu, P., Lengieza, C., Lew-Smith, J.
E., Tillberg, M. and Garrels, J. I. YPD, PombePD and WormPD: model organism volumes of

the BioKnowledge library, an integrated resource for protein information, Nucleic Acids Res 2001;29:75-79.

79. Bult CJ, Eppig, J.T., Kadin, J.A., Richardson, J.E. and Blake, J.A. The Mouse Genome Database (MGD): mouse biology and model systems, Nucleic Acids Res 2008;36:D724-728.

80. Zdobnov EM, Lopez, R., Apweiler, R. and Etzold, T. The EBI SRS server-new features, Bioinformatics 2002;18:1149-1150.

81. Kasprzyk A, Keefe, D., Smedley, D., London, D., Spooner, W., Melsopp, C., Hammond, M., Rocca-Serra, P., Cox, T. and Birney, E. EnsMart: a generic system for fast and flexible access to biological data, Genome Res 2004;14:160-169.

82. Shah SP, Huang, Y., Xu, T., Yuen, M.M., Ling, J. and Ouellette, B.F. Atlas - a data warehouse for integrative bioinformatics, BMC Bioinformatics 2005;6:34.

83. Topaloglou T, Kosky, A. and Markowitz, V. Seamless integration of biological applications within a database framework, Proc Int Conf Intell Syst Mol Biol 1999:272-281.

84. Haas LM, Schwarz, P.M., Kodali, P., Kotlar, E., Rice, J.E. and Swope, W.C. DiscoveryLink: a system for integrated access to life sciences data sources, IBM Syst. J. 2001;40:489-511.

85. Baker PG, Brass, A., Bechhofer, S., Goble, C., Paton, N. and Stevens, R. TAMBIS--Transparent Access to Multiple Bioinformatics Information Sources, Proc Int Conf Intell Syst Mol Biol 1998;6:25-34.

86. Wilkinson MD, Links, M. BioMOBY: an open source biological web services proposal, Brief Bioinform 2002;3:331-341.

87. Kohler J, Schulze-Kremer, S. The semantic metadatabase (SEMEDA): ontology based integration of federated molecular biological data sources, In Silico Biol 2002;2:219-231.

88. Jenkinson AM, Albrecht, M., Birney, E., Blankenburg, H., Down, T., Finn, R.D., Hermjakob, H., Hubbard, T.J., Jimenez, R.C., Jones, P., Kahari, A., Kulesha, E., Macias, J.R., Reeves, G.A. and Prlic, A. Integrating biological data--the Distributed Annotation System, BMC Bioinformatics 2008;9 Suppl 8:S3.

Ashburner M, Ball, C. A., Blake, J. A., Botstein, D., Butler, H., Cherry, J. M., Davis,
A. P., Dolinski, K., Dwight, S. S., Eppig, J. T., Harris, M. A., Hill, D. P., Issel-Tarver, L.,

Kasarskis, A., Lewis, S., Matese, J. C., Richardson, J. E., Ringwald, M., Rubin, G. M. and Sherlock, G. Gene ontology: tool for the unification of biology. The Gene Ontology Consortium, Nat Genet 2000;25:25-29.

90. Pearson WR. Rapid and sensitive sequence comparison with FASTP and FASTA, Methods Enzymol 1990;183:63-98.

91. Sleator R, Walsh, P. An overview of in silico protein function prediction, Archives of Microbiology 2010;192:151-155.

92. Frawley WJ, Piatetsky-Shapiro, G. and Matheus, C.J. Knowledge Discovery in Databases, AAAI Press 1992.

93. Kovalerchuk B, Triantaphyllou, E., Ruiz, J.F., Torvik, V.I. and Vityaev, E. The reliability issue of computer-aided breast cancer diagnosis, Comput Biomed Res 2000;33:296-313.

94. Dreiseitl S, Ohno-Machado, L., Kittler, H., Vinterbo, S., Billhardt, H. and Binder, M. A comparison of machine learning methods for the diagnosis of pigmented skin lesions, J Biomed Inform 2001;34:28-36.

95. Bammert GF, Fostel, J.M. Genome-wide expression patterns in Saccharomyces cerevisiae: comparison of drug treatments and genetic alterations affecting biosynthesis of ergosterol, Antimicrob Agents Chemother 2000;44:1255-1265.

96. Eisen MB, Spellman, P.T., Brown, P.O. and Botstein, D. Cluster analysis and display of genome-wide expression patterns, Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1998;95:14863-14868.

97. Herwig R, Poustka, A. J., Muller, C., Bull, C., Lehrach, H. and O'Brien, J. Large-scale clustering of cDNA-fingerprinting data, Genome Res 1999;9:1093-1105.

98. Sawa TaO-M, L. A neural network-based similarity index for clustering DNA microarray data, Computers in Biology and Medicine 2003;33:1-15

99. Belacel N, Cuperlovic-Culf, M., Laflamme, M. and Ouellette, R. Fuzzy J-Means and VNS methods for clustering genes from microarray data, Bioinformatics 2004;20:1690-1701.

Agrawal R, Srikant, R. Fast Algorithms for Mining Association Rules, Proc. 20th Int.
Conf. on Very Large Databases (VLDB 1994, Santiago de Chile), 1994; 487-499.

101. Brin S, Motwani, R., Ullman, J. D. and Tsur, S. Dynamic itemset counting and implication rules for market basket data, SIGMOD Record (ACM Special Interest Group on Management of Data 1997;26(2). 255-264.

 Carmona-Saez P, Chagoyen, M., Rodriguez, A., Trelles, O., Carazo, J. M. and Pascual-Montano, A. Integrated analysis of gene expression by Association Rules Discovery, BMC Bioinformatics 2006;7:54.

103. Martinez R, Pasquier, N. and Pasquier, C. GenMiner: mining non-redundant association rules from integrated gene expression data and annotations, Bioinformatics 2008;24:2643-2644.

104. Tan AC, Gilbert, D. An empirical comparison of supervised machine learning techniques in bioinformatics, Proceedings of the First Asia-Pacific bioinformatics conference on Bioinformatics 2003;19:219-222.

105. Kasturi J, Acharya, R. Clustering of diverse genomic data using information fusion, Bioinformatics 2005;21:423-429.

106. Tamames J, Ouzounis, C., Casari, G., Sander, C. and Valencia, A. EUCLID: automatic classification of proteins in functional classes by their database annotations, Bioinformatics 1998;14:542-543.

107. Andrade MA, Valencia, A. Automatic extraction of keywords from scientific text: application to the knowledge domain of protein families, Bioinformatics 1998;14:600-607.

108. Raychaudhuri S, Chang, J.T., Sutphin, P.D. and Altman, R.B. Associating genes with gene ontology codes using a maximum entropy analysis of biomedical literature, Genome Res 2002;12:203-214.

109. Xie H, Wasserman, A., Levine, Z., Novik, A., Grebinskiy, V., Shoshan, A. and Mintz,L. Large-scale protein annotation through gene ontology, Genome Res 2002;12:785-794.

110. Nair R, Rost, B. Inferring sub-cellular localization through automated lexical analysis, Bioinformatics 2002;18 Suppl 1:S78-86.

111. Stapley BJ, Kelley, L.A. and Sternberg, M.J. Predicting the sub-cellular location of proteins from text using support vector machines, Pac Symp Biocomput 2002:374-385.

112. Blaschke C, Cornide, L., Oliveros, J.C. and Valencia, A. Biological function and DNA expression arrays, In van der Vet,P. et al., (eds), Information Extraction in Molecular Biology 2001:13-26.

113. Al-Shahrour F, Diaz-Uriarte, R. and Dopazo, J. FatiGO: a web tool for finding significant associations of Gene Ontology terms with groups of genes, Bioinformatics 2004;20:578-580.

114. Jenssen TK, Laegreid, A., Komorowski, J. and Hovig, E. A literature network of human genes for high-throughput analysis of gene expression, Nat Genet 2001;28:21-28.

115. Jaeger S, Gaudan, S., Leser, U. and Rebholz-Schuhmann, D. Integrating proteinprotein interactions and text mining for protein function prediction, BMC Bioinformatics 2008;9 Suppl 8:S2.

116. Swanson D. Fish oil, Raynaud's syndrome, and undiscovered public knowledge, Perspectives in Biology and Medicine, 1986;30:7-18.

117. Slooter AJ, Bronzova, J., Witteman, J.C., Van Broeckhoven, C., Hofman, A. and van Duijn, C.M. Estrogen use and early onset Alzheimer's disease: a population-based study, J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 1999;67:779-781.

118. Hyun S, Johnson, S.B. and Bakken, S. Exploring the ability of natural language processing to extract data from nursing narratives, Comput Inform Nurs 2009;27:215-223; quiz 224-215.

119. Rzhetsky A, Iossifov, I., Koike, T., Krauthammer, M., Kra, P., Morris, M., Yu, H., Duboue, P.A., Weng, W., Wilbur, W.J., Hatzivassiloglou, V. and Friedman, C. GeneWays: a system for extracting, analyzing, visualizing, and integrating molecular pathway data, J Biomed Inform 2004;37:43-53.

120. Chou SM, Lee, T.S., Shao, Y. E. and Chen, I.F. Mining the breast cancer pattern using artificial neural networks and multivariate adaptive regression splines., Expert System with Applications 2004; 27: 133-142.

121. Rocco D, Critchlow, T. Automatic discovery and classification of bioinformatics Web sources, Bioinformatics 2003;19:1927-1933.

122. Pendharkar PC, Rodger, J.A., Yaverbaum, X.X., Herman, N. and Benner, M. . Association, statistical mathematical and neural approaches, for mining breast cancer patterns, Expert Systems with Applications 1999;17:223-232.

123. Tang C, Zhang, A. and Pei, J. (2003), 'Mining phenotypes and informative genes from gene expression data', *Proceedings of the ninth ACM SIGKDD international conference on Knowledge discovery and data mining*, ACM, Washington, D.C.

124. Carroll JS, Meyer, C.A., Song, J., Li, W., Geistlinger, T.R., Eeckhoute, J., Brodsky, A.S., Keeton, E.K., Fertuck, K. C., Hall, G.F., Wang, Q., Bekiranov, S., Sementchenko, V., Fox, E.A., Silver, P.A., Gingeras, T.R., Liu, X.S. and Brown, M. Genome-wide analysis of estrogen receptor binding sites., Nat. Genet. 2006;38:1289–1297.

125. Lein ES, Hawrylycz, M.J., Ao, N., Ayres, M., Bensinger, A., Bernard, A., Boe, A.F., Boguski, M.S., Brockway, K.S., Byrnes, E.J., Chen, L., Chen, L., Chen, T.M., Chin, M.C., Chong, J., Crook, B.E., Czaplinska, A., Dang, C.N., Datta, S., Dee, N.R., Desaki, A.L., Desta, T., Diep, E., Dolbeare, T.A., Donelan, M.J., Dong, H.W., Dougherty, J.G., Duncan, B.J., Ebbert, A.J., Eichele, G., Estin, L.K., Faber, C., Facer, B.A., Fields, R., Fischer, S.R., Fliss, T.P., Frensley, C., Gates, S.N., Glattfelder, K.J., Halverson, K.R., Hart, M.R., Hohmann, J.G., Howell, M.P., Jeung, D.P., Johnson, R.A., Karr, P.T., Kawal, R., Kidney, J.M., Knapik, R.H., Kuan, C.L., Lake, J.H., Laramee, A.R., Larsen, K.D., Lau, C., Lemon, T.A., Liang, A.J., Liu, Y., Luong, L.T., Michaels, J., Morgan, J.J., Morgan, R.J., Mortrud, M.T., Mosqueda, N.F., Ng L.L., Ng, R., Orta, G.J., Overly, C.C., Pak, T.H., Parry, S.E., Pathak, S.D., Pearson, O.C., Puchalski, R.B., Riley, Z.L., Rockett, H.R., Rowland, S.A., Royall, J.J., Ruiz, M.J., Sarno, N.R., Schaffnit, K., Shapovalova, N.V., Sivisay, T., Slaughterbeck, C.R., Smith, S.C., Smith, K.A., Smith, B.I., Sodt, A.J., Stewart, N.N., Stumpf, K.R., Sunkin, S.M., Sutram, M., Tam, A., Teemer, C.D., Thaller, C., Thompson, C.L., Varnam, L.R., Visel, A., Whitlock, R.M., Wohnoutka, P.E., Wolkey, C.K., Wong, V.Y., Wood, M., Yaylaoglu, M.B., Young, R.C., Youngstrom, B.L., Yuan, X.F., Zhang, B., Zwingman, T.A. and Jones, A.R. Genome-wide atlas of gene expression in the adult mouse brain, Nature 2007;445:168-176.

126. Souchelnytskyi S. Bridging proteomics and systems biology: what are theroads to be traveled?, Proteomics 2005;5:4123–4137.

127. van Steensel B. Mapping of genetic and epigenetic regulatory networks using microarrays, Nat. Genet. 2005;37:18–24.

128. Feingold EA, Good, P.J., Guyer, M.S., Kamholz, S., Liefer, L., Wetterstrand, K. and Collins, F.S. The ENCODE (ENCyclopedia Of DNA Elements) Project. The ENCODE Project Consortium, Science 2004;306:636-640.

129. Ge H, Walhout, A.J. and Vidal, M. Integrating `omic' information: a bridge between genomics and systems biology. Trends in Genetics 2003;19:551-560.

130. Ackoff RL. From data to wisdom, Journal of Applies Systems Analysis 1989;16:3–9.

131. Lopez B, Plaza, E. . Case-based learning of plans and medical diagnosis goal states, Artificial Intelligence in Medicine 1997;9:29–60.

132. Khan AS, Hoffmann, A. . Building a case-based diet recommendation system without a knowledge engineer, Artificial Intelligence in Medicine 2003;27:155–179.

133. Porter BW, Bareiss, E.R. . PROTOS: an experiment in knowledge acquisition for heuristic classification tasks, Proceedings of the First International Meeting on Advances in Learning (IMAL), Les Arcs, France, 1986:159–174.

134. Koton P. Reasoning about evidence in causal explanations., Proceedings of the Seventh National Conference on Artificial Intelligence, AAI Press, Menlo Park, CA,(256-263) 1988.

135. Montani S, Magni, P., Bellazzi, R., Larizza, C., Roudsari, A.V. and Carson, E.R. Integrating model-based decision support in a multi-modal reasoning system for managing type 1 diabetic patients, Artificial Intelligence in Medicine 2003;29:131–151.

136. Bernstein AD, Chiang, C.J. and Parsonnet, V. Diagnosis and management of pacemaker-related problems using and interactive expert system, IEEE 17th Annual Conference on Engineering in Medicine and Biology Society 1995;1:701–702.

137. Dragulescu D, Albu, A. Expert system for medical predictions, 4th International Symposium on Applied Computational Intelligence and Informatics 2007:13–18.

138. Itchhaporia D, Snow, P.B., Almassy, R.J. and Oetgen, W.J. Artificial neural networks: current status in cardiovascular medicine, Journal of the American College of Cardiology 1996; 28:515–521.

139. Brasil LM, de Azevedo, F.M. and Barreto, J.M. . Hybrid expert system for decision supporting in the medical area: complexity and cognitive computing International, Journal of Medical Informatics 2001;63:19–30.

140. Power T, McCabe, B. and Harbison, S.A. FaSTR DNA: a new expert system for forensic DNA analysis, Forensic Sci Int Genet 2008 2:159-165.

141. Edman P. On the mechanism of the phenyl isothiocyanate degradation of peptides, Ada Chim. Scand. 1956;10:761-768.

142. Hu L, Saulinskas, E.F., Johnson, P. and Harrington, P.B. Development of an expert system for amino acid sequence identification., Comput Appl Biosci. 1996;12:311-318.

143. Praveen B, Vincent, S., Murty, U.S., Krishna, A.R. and Jamil, K. A rapid identification system for metallothionein proteins using expert system, Bioinformation 2005;1:14-15.

144. Quinlan JR. Induction of Decision Trees, Readings in Machine Learning 1986;1:81-106.

145. Zhang W, Chait, B.T. ProFound: an expert system for protein identification using mass spectrometric peptide mapping information, Anal Chem. 2000;72:2482-2489.

146. Gouret P, Vitiello, V., Balandraud, N., Gilles, A., Pontarotti, P. and Danchin, E.G. FIGENIX: Intelligent automation of genomic annotation: expertise integration in a new software platform, BMC Bioinformatics. 2005;6:198.

147. Liao SH. Expert system methodologies and applications-a decade review from 1995 to 2004, Expert Systems with Applications 2005;28:93-103.

148. Durkin J (1996), 'Expert Systems: A View of the Field', pp. 56-63.

149. Dhaliwal JS, Benbasat, I. The Use and Effects of Knowledge-Based System Explanations: Theoretical Foundations and a Framework for Empirical Evaluation, INFORMATION SYSTEMS RESEARCH 1996;7:342-362.

150. Giarratano JC, Riley, G. Expert Systems, Principles and Programming. Course Technology 2005.

151. Pop M, Salzberg, S.L. Bioinformatics challenges of new sequencing technology, Trends Genet 2008;24:142-149.

152. Wang ZX. A re-estimation for the total numbers of protein folds and superfamilies, Protein Eng 1998;11:621-626.

153. Chothia C, Lesk, A.M. The relation between the divergence of sequence and structure in proteins, EMBO J 1986;5:823-826.

154. Koehl P, Levitt, M. Sequence variations within protein families are linearly related to structural variations, J Mol Biol 2002;323:551-562.

155. Yang AS, Honig, B. An integrated approach to the analysis and modeling of protein sequences and structures. II. On the relationship between sequence and structural similarity for proteins that are not obviously related in sequence, J Mol Biol 2000;301:679-689.

156. Chung SY, Subbiah, S. A structural explanation for the twilight zone of protein sequence homology, Structure 1996;4:1123-1127.

157. Gan HH, Perlow, R.A., Roy, S. Ko, J., Wu, M., Huang, J., Yan, S., Nicoletta, A., Vafai, J., Sun, D., Wang, L., Noah, J.E., Pasquali, S. and Schlick, T. Analysis of protein sequence/structure similarity relationships, Biophys J 2002;83:2781-2791.

158. Thornton JM, Todd, A.E., Milburn, D., Borkakoti, N. and Orengo, C.A. From structure to function: approaches and limitations, Nat Struct Biol 2000;7 Suppl:991-994.

159. Watson JD, Laskowski, R.A. and Thornton, J.M. Predicting protein function from sequence and structural data, Curr Opin Struct Biol 2005;15:275-284.

160. Eichler J, Adams, M.W. Posttranslational protein modification in Archaea, Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 2005;69:393-425.

161. Wilson CA, Kreychman, J. and Gerstein, M. Assessing annotation transfer for genomics: quantifying the relations between protein sequence, structure and function through traditional and probabilistic scores, J Mol Biol 2000;297:233-249.

162. Lesk AM, Bernstein, H.J. and Bernstein, F.C. . Molecular graphics in structural biology., Computational Structural Biology, Methods and Applications.(M. Peitsch and T. Schwede, eds.) 1994:pp.729-770.

163. Lecompte O, Ripp, R., Puzos-Barbe, V., Duprat, S., Heilig, R., Dietrich, J., Thierry, J.C. and Poch, O. Genome evolution at the genus level: comparison of three complete genomes of hyperthermophilic archaea, Genome Res 2001;11:981-993.

164. Woese CR, Pace, N.R. Probing RNA structure, function and history by comparative analysis, In "The RNA World". Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, Cold Spring Harbor, NY 1993.

165. Iwabe N, Kuma, K., Hasegawa, M., Osawa, S. and Miyata, T. Evolutionary relationship of archaebacteria, eubacteria, and eukaryotes inferred from phylogenetic trees of duplicated genes, Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1989;86:9355-9359.

166. Lopez-Garcia P, Moreira, D. Metabolic symbiosis at the origin of eukaryotes, Trends Biochem Sci 1999;24:88-93.

167. Forterre P, Philippe, H. Where is the root of the universal tree of life?, Bioessays 1999;21:871-879.

168. Poole A, Jeffares, D. and Penny, D. Early evolution: prokaryotes, the new kids on the block, Bioessays 1999;21:880-889.

169. Lecompte O, Ripp, R., Thierry, J.C., Moras, D. and Poch, O. Comparative analysis of ribosomal proteins in complete genomes: an example of reductive evolution at the domain scale, Nucleic Acids Res 2002;30:5382-5390.

170. Page RDM, Holmes, E.C. Molecular Evolution: A Phylogenetic Approach, Blackwell Science, Oxford, U.K 1998.

171. Morrison DA, Ellis, J.T. Effects of nucleotide sequence alignment on phylogeny estimation: a case study of 18S rDNAs of apicomplexa, Mol Biol Evol 1997;14:428-441.

172. Hardison RC. Comparative genomics, PLoS Biol 2003;1:E58.

173. Shapiro JA. A 21st century view of evolution: genome system architecture, repetitive DNA, and natural genetic engineering, Gene 2005;345:91-100.

174. Darling AE, Mau, B., Blattner, F.R. and Perna, N.T. GRIL: genome rearrangement and inversion locator, Bioinformatics 2004;20:122-124.

175. Elnitski L, Giardine, B., Shah, P., Zhang, Y., Riemer, C., Weirauch, M., Burhans, R., Miller, W. and Hardison, R.C. Improvements to GALA and dbERGE II: databases featuring genomic sequence alignment, annotation and experimental results, Nucleic Acids Res 2005;33:D466-470.

176. Ye L, Huang, X. MAP2: multiple alignment of syntenic genomic sequences, Nucleic Acids Res 2005;33:162-170.

177. McClelland M, Florea, L., Sanderson, K., Clifton, S. W., Parkhill, J., Churcher, C., Dougan, G., Wilson, R. K. and Miller, W. Comparison of the Escherichia coli K-12 genome with sampled genomes of a Klebsiella pneumoniae and three salmonella enterica serovars, Typhimurium, Typhi and Paratyphi, Nucleic Acids Res 2000;28:4974-4986.

Waterston RH, Lindblad-Toh, K., Birney, E., Rogers, J., Abril, J.F., Agarwal, P., 178. Agarwala, R., Ainscough, R., Alexandersson, M., An, P., Antonarakis, S.E., Attwood, J., Baertsch, R., Bailey, J., Barlow, K., Beck, S., Berry, E., Birren, B., Bloom, T., Bork, P., Botcherby, M., Bray, N., Brent, M.R., Brown, S.D., Bult, C., Burton, J., Butler, J., Campbell, R.D., Carninci, P., Cawley, S., Chiaromonte, F., Chinwalla, A.T., Church, D.M., Clamp, M., Clee, C., Collins, F.S., Cook, L.L., Copley, R.R., Coulson, A., Couronne, O., Cuff, J., Curwen, V., Cutts, T., Daly, M., David, R., Davies, J., Delehaunty, K.D., Deri, J., Dermitzakis, E.T., Dewey, C., Dickens, N.J., Diekhans, M., Dodge, S., Dubchak, I., Dunn, D.M., Eddy, S. R., Elnitski, L., Emes, R.D., Eswara, P., Eyras, E., Felsenfeld, A., Fewell, G. A., Flicek, P., Foley, K., Frankel, W.N., Fulton, L.A., Fulton, R.S., Furey, T.S., Gage, D., Gibbs, R.A., Glusman, G., Gnerre, S., Goldman, N., Goodstadt, L., Grafham, D., Graves, T.A., Green, E.D., Gregory, S., Guigo, R., Guyer, M., Hardison, R.C., Haussler, D., Hayashizaki, Y., Hillier, L. W., Hinrichs, A., Hlavina, W., Holzer, T., Hsu, F., Hua, A., Hubbard, T., Hunt, A., Jackson, I., Jaffe, D.B., Johnson, L.S., Jones, M., Jones, T.A., Joy, A., Kamal, M., Karlsson, E.K., Karolchik, D., Kasprzyk, A., Kawai, J., Keibler, E., Kells, C., Kent, W.J., Kirby, A., Kolbe, D.L., Korf, I., Kucherlapati, R.S., Kulbokas, E.J., Kulp, D., Landers, T., Leger, J.P., Leonard, S., Letunic, I., Levine, R., Li, J., Li, M., Lloyd, C., Lucas, S., Ma, B., Maglott, D.R., Mardis, E.R., Matthews, L., Mauceli, E., Mayer, J. H., McCarthy, M., McCombie, W.R., McLaren, S., McLay, K., McPherson, J.D., Meldrim, J., Meredith, B., Mesirov, J.P., Miller, W., Miner, T.L., Mongin, E., Montgomery, K.T., Morgan, M., Mott, R., Mullikin, J.C., Muzny, D.M., Nash, W.E., Nelson, J.O., Nhan, M.N., Nicol, R., Ning, Z., Nusbaum, C., O'Connor, M.J., Okazaki, Y., Oliver, K., Overton-Larty, E., Pachter, L., Parra, G., Pepin, K.H., Peterson, J., Pevzner, P., Plumb, R., Pohl, C.S., Poliakov, A., Ponce, T.C., Ponting, C.P., Potter, S., Quail, M., Reymond, A., Roe, B.A., Roskin, K.M., Rubin, E.M., Rust, A.G., Santos, R., Sapojnikov, V., Schultz, B., Schultz, J., Schwartz, M.S., Schwartz, S., Scott, C., Seaman, S., Searle, S., Sharpe, T., Sheridan, A., Shownkeen, R., Sims, S., Singer,

J.B., Slater, G., Smit, A., Smith, D.R., Spencer, B., Stabenau, A., Stange-Thomann, N., Sugnet, C., Suyama, M., Tesler, G., Thompson, J., Torrents, D., Trevaskis, E., Tromp, J., Ucla, C., Ureta-Vidal, A., Vinson, J.P., Von Niederhausern, A.C., Wade, C.M., Wall, M., Weber, R.J., Weiss, R.B., Wendl, M.C., West, A. P., Wetterstrand, K., Wheeler, R., Whelan, S., Wierzbowski, J., Willey, D., Williams, S., Wilson, R.K., Winter, E., Worley, K.C., Wyman, D., Yang, S., Yang, S.P., Zdobnov, E.M., Zody, M.C. and Lander, E.S. Initial sequencing and comparative analysis of the mouse genome, Nature 2002;420:520-562.

179. Rubin GM, Yandell, M.D., Wortman, J.R., Gabor Miklos, G.L., Nelson, C.R., Hariharan, I.K., Fortini, M.E., Li, P.W., Apweiler, R., Fleischmann, W., Cherry, J.M., Henikoff, S., Skupski, M.P., Misra, S., Ashburner, M., Birney, E., Boguski, M.S., Brody, T., Brokstein, P., Celniker, S.E., Chervitz, S.A., Coates, D., Cravchik, A., Gabrielian, A., Galle, R.F., Gelbart, W.M., George, R.A., Goldstein, L.S., Gong, F., Guan, P., Harris, N.L., Hay, B. A., Hoskins, R.A., Li, J., Li, Z., Hynes, R.O., Jones, S.J., Kuehl, P.M., Lemaitre, B., Littleton, J.T., Morrison, D.K., Mungall C, O'Farrell, P.H., Pickeral, O.K., Shue, C., Vosshall, L.B., Zhang, J., Zhao, Q., Zheng, X.H. and Lewis, S. Comparative genomics of the eukaryotes, Science 2000;287:2204-2215.

180. Makarova KS, Koonin, E.V. Comparative genomics of Archaea: how much have we learned in six years, and what's next?, Genome Biol 2003;4:115.

181. Frazer KA, Pachter, L., Poliakov, A., Rubin, E.M. and Dubchak, I. VISTA: computational tools for comparative genomics, Nucleic Acids Res 2004;32:W273-279.

182. Curwen V, Eyras, E., Andrews, T.D., Clarke, L., Mongin, E., Searle, S.M. and Clamp,M. The Ensembl automatic gene annotation system, Genome Res 2004;14:942-950.

183. Hsu F, Pringle, T.H., Kuhn, R.M., Karolchik, D., Diekhans, M., Haussler, D. and Kent, W.J. The UCSC Proteome Browser, Nucleic Acids Res 2005;33:D454-458.

184. Stoetzel C, Laurier, V., Davis, E.E., Muller, J., Rix, S., Badano, J.L., Leitch, C.C., Salem, N., Chouery, E., Corbani, S., Jalk, N., Vicaire, S., Sarda, P., Hamel, C., Lacombe, D., Holder, M., Odent, S., Holder, S., Brooks, A.S., Elcioglu, N.H., Silva, E.D., Rossillion, B., Sigaudy, S., de Ravel, T.J., Lewis, R.A., Leheup, B., Verloes, A., Amati-Bonneau, P., Megarbane, A., Poch, O., Bonneau, D., Beales, P.L., Mandel, J.L., Katsanis, N. and Dollfus, H. BBS10 encodes a vertebrate-specific chaperonin-like protein and is a major BBS locus, Nat Genet 2006;38:521-524.

185. Aggarwal G, Ramaswamy, R. Ab initio gene identification: prokaryote genome annotation with GeneScan and GLIMMER, J Biosci 2002;27:7-14.

186. Zhang MQ. Computational prediction of eukaryotic protein-coding genes, Nat Rev Genet 2002;3:698-709.

187. Dandekar T, Huynen, M., Regula, J. T., Ueberle, B., Zimmermann, C. U., Andrade, M. A., Doerks, T., Sanchez-Pulido, L., Snel, B., Suyama, M., Yuan, Y.P., Herrmann, R. and Bork, P. Re-annotating the Mycoplasma pneumoniae genome sequence: adding value, function and reading frames, Nucleic Acids Res 2000;28:3278-3288.

188. Karplus K, Barrett, C. and Hughey, R. Hidden Markov models for detecting remote protein homologies, Bioinformatics 1998;14:846-856.

189. Yona G, Levitt, M. Within the twilight zone: a sensitive profile-profile comparison tool based on information theory, J Mol Biol 2002;315:1257-1275.

190. Thompson JD, Gibson, T.J., Plewniak, F., Jeanmougin, F. and Higgins, D.G. The CLUSTAL\_X windows interface: flexible strategies for multiple sequence alignment aided by quality analysis tools, Nucleic Acids Res 1997;25:4876-4882.

191. Mulder NJ, Apweiler, R., Attwood, T.K., Bairoch, A., Bateman, A., Binns, D., Bradley, P., Bork, P., Bucher, P., Cerutti, L., Copley, R., Courcelle, E., Das, U., Durbin, R., Fleischmann, W., Gough, J., Haft, D., Harte, N., Hulo, N., Kahn, D., Kanapin, A., Krestyaninova, M., Lonsdale, D., Lopez, R., Letunic, I., Madera, M., Maslen, J., McDowall, J., Mitchell, A., Nikolskaya, A.N., Orchard, S., Pagni, M., Ponting, C.P., Quevillon, E., Selengut, J., Sigrist, C. J., Silventoinen, V., Studholme, D.J., Vaughan, R. and Wu, C.H. InterPro, progress and status in 2005, Nucleic Acids Res 2005;33:D201-205.

192. Gaasterland T, Sensen, C.W. Fully automated genome analysis that reflects user needs and preferences. A detailed introduction to the MAGPIE system architecture, Biochimie 1996;78:302-310.

193. Medigue C, Rechenmann, F., Danchin, A. and Viari, A. Imagene: an integrated computer environment for sequence annotation and analysis, Bioinformatics 1999;15:2-15.

194. Hoersch S, Leroy, C., Brown, N.P., Andrade, M.A. and Sander, C. The GeneQuiz web server: protein functional analysis through the Web, Trends Biochem Sci 2000;25:33-35.

195. Jareborg N, Durbin, R. Alfresco--a workbench for comparative genomic sequence analysis, Genome Res 2000;10:1148-1157.

196. Moult J. A decade of CASP: progress, bottlenecks and prognosis in protein structure prediction, Curr Opin Struct Biol 2005;15:285-289.

197. Lee S, Lee, B.C. and Kim, D. Prediction of protein secondary structure content using amino acid composition and evolutionary information, Proteins 2006;62:1107-1114.

198. Al-Lazikani B, Jung, J., Xiang, Z. and Honig, B. Protein structure prediction, Curr Opin Chem Biol 2001;5:51-56.

199. Chen CP, Kernytsky, A. and Rost, B. Transmembrane helix predictions revisited, Protein Sci 2002;11:2774-2791.

200. Lichtarge O, Bourne, H.R. and Cohen, F.E. An evolutionary trace method defines binding surfaces common to protein families, J Mol Biol 1996;257:342-358.

201. Brelivet Y, Kammerer, S., Rochel, N., Poch, O. and Moras, D. Signature of the oligomeric behaviour of nuclear receptors at the sequence and structural level, EMBO Rep 2004;5:423-429.

202. Jossinet F, Westhof, E. Sequence to Structure (S2S): display, manipulate and interconnect RNA data from sequence to structure, Bioinformatics 2005;21:3320-3321.

203. Zuker M. On finding all suboptimal foldings of an RNA molecule, Science 1989;244:48-52.

204. Shapiro BA, Kasprzak, W. STRUCTURELAB: a heterogeneous bioinformatics system for RNA structure analysis, J Mol Graph 1996;14:194-205, 222-194.

205. Bonneau R, Strauss CE, Baker D. Improving the performance of Rosetta using multiple sequence alignment information and global measures of hydrophobic core formation, Proteins 2001;43:1-11.

206. Pazos F, Valencia, A. Similarity of phylogenetic trees as indicator of protein-protein interaction, Protein Eng 2001;14:609-614.

207. Kim Y, Subramaniam, S. Locally defined protein phylogenetic profiles reveal previously missed protein interactions and functional relationships, Proteins 2006;62:1115-1124.

208. Pazos F, Helmer-Citterich, M., Ausiello, G. and Valencia, A. Correlated mutations contain information about protein-protein interaction, J Mol Biol 1997;271:511-523.

209. Pazos F, Valencia, A. In silico two-hybrid system for the selection of physically interacting protein pairs, Proteins 2002;47:219-227.

210. Ramensky V, Bork, P., Sunyaev, S. Human non-synonymous SNPs: server and survey, Nucleic Acids Res. 2002 30:3894-3900.

211. Stenson PD, Ball, E.V., Mort, M., Phillips, A.D., Shiel, J.A., Thomas, N.S., Abeysinghe, S., Krawczak, M. and Cooper, D.N. Human Gene Mutation Database (HGMD): 2003 update, Hum Mutat 2003;21:577-581.

212. Bao L, Cui, Y. Prediction of the phenotypic effects of non-synonymous single nucleotide polymorphisms using structural and evolutionary information, Bioinformatics 2005;21:2185-2190.

213. Gardezi SA, Nguyen, C., Malloy, P.J., Posner, G.H., Feldman, D. and Peleg, S. A rationale for treatment of hereditary vitamin D-resistant rickets with analogs of 1 alpha,25dihydroxyvitamin D(3), J Biol Chem 2001;276:29148-29156.

214. Rochel N, Wurtz, J.M., Mitschler, A., Klaholz, B. and Moras, D. The crystal structure of the nuclear receptor for vitamin D bound to its natural ligand, Mol Cell 2000;5:173-179.

215. Sankoff D. Minimal mutation trees of sequences., SIAM J. Appl. Math 1975 28:35-42.

216. Needleman SB, Wunsch, C.D. A general method applicable to the search for similarities in the amino acid sequence of two proteins. J Mol Biol. 1970 48:443-453.

217. Lipman DJ, Altschul, S.F. and Kececioglu, J.D. A tool for multiple sequence alignment, Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1989;86:4412-4415.

218. Feng DF, Doolittle, R.F. Progressive sequence alignment as a prerequisite to correct phylogenetic trees, J Mol Evol 1987;25:351-360.

219. Barton GJ, Sternberg, M.J. A strategy for the rapid multiple alignment of protein sequences. Confidence levels from tertiary structure comparisons, J Mol Biol 1987;198:327-337.

220. Taylor WR. Multiple sequence alignment by a pairwise algorithm, Comput Appl Biosci 1987;3:81-87.

221. Thompson JD, Higgins, D.G. and Gibson, T.J. CLUSTAL W: improving the sensitivity of progressive multiple sequence alignment through sequence weighting, position-specific gap penalties and weight matrix choice, Nucleic Acids Res 1994;22:4673-4680.

222. Sneath PHA, Sokal, R.R. Numerical taxonomy - the principles and practice of numerical classification, W. H. Freeman: San Francisco 1973.

223. Saitou N, Nei, M. The neighbor-joining method: a new method for reconstructing phylogenetic trees, Mol Biol Evol 1987;4:406-425.

224. Smith RF, Smith, T.F. Pattern-induced multi-sequence alignment (PIMA) algorithm employing secondary structure-dependent gap penalties for use in comparative protein modelling, Protein Eng 1992;5:35-41.

225. Hein J. Unified approach to alignment and phylogenies, Methods Enzymol 1990;183:626-645.

226. Eddy SR. Profile hidden Markov models, Bioinformatics 1998;14:755-763.

227. Lawrence CE, Altschul, S.F., Boguski, M.S., Liu, J.S., Neuwald, A.F. and Wootton, J.C. Detecting subtle sequence signals: a Gibbs sampling strategy for multiple alignment, Science 1993;262:208-214.

228. Notredame C, Higgins, D.G. SAGA: sequence alignment by genetic algorithm, Nucleic Acids Res 1996;24:1515-1524.

229. Gotoh O. Significant improvement in accuracy of multiple protein sequence alignments by iterative refinement as assessed by reference to structural alignments, J Mol Biol 1996;264:823-838.

230. Morgenstern B, Dress, A. and Werner, T. Multiple DNA and protein sequence alignment based on segment-to-segment comparison, Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1996;93:12098-12103.

231. Thompson JD, Plewniak, F. and Poch, O. BAliBASE: a benchmark alignment database for the evaluation of multiple alignment programs, Bioinformatics 1999;15:87-88.

232. Gardner PP, Wilm, A. and Washietl, S. A benchmark of multiple sequence alignment programs upon structural RNAs, Nucleic Acids Res 2005;33:2433-2439.

233. Thompson JD, Plewniak, F., Thierry, J. and Poch, O. DbClustal: rapid and reliable global multiple alignments of protein sequences detected by database searches, Nucleic Acids Res 2000;28:2919-2926.

234. Notredame C, Higgins, D.G. and Heringa, J. T-Coffee: A novel method for fast and accurate multiple sequence alignment, J Mol Biol 2000;302:205–217.

235. Katoh K, Misawa, K., Kuma, K. and Miyata, T. MAFFT: a novel method for rapid multiple sequence alignment based on fast Fourier transform, Nucleic Acids Res. 2002;30:3059-3066.

236. Edgar RC. MUSCLE: multiple sequence alignment with high accuracy and high throughput, Nucleic Acids Res. 2004;32:1792-1797.

237. Do CB, Mahabhashyam, M.S., Brudno, M. and Batzoglou, S. ProbCons: Probabilistic consistency-based multiple sequence alignment, Genome Res. 2005;15:330-340.

238. O'Sullivan O, Suhre, K., Abergel, C., Higgins, D.G. and Notredame, C. 3DCoffee: combining protein sequences and structures within multiple sequence alignments, J. Mol. Biol. 2004;340:385–395.

239. Dayhoff MO, Schwartz, R.M. and Orcutt, B.C. A model of evolutionary change in proteins, In "Atlas of Protein Sequence and Structure." National Biomedical Research Foundation 1978: 345-352.

240. Luthy R, McLachlan, A. D. and Eisenberg, D. Secondary structure-based profiles: use of structure-conserving scoring tables in searching protein sequence databases for structural similarities, Proteins 1991;10:229-239.

241. Ng PC, Henikoff, J.G. and Henikoff, S. PHAT: a transmembrane-specific substitution matrix. Predicted hydrophobic and transmembrane, Bioinformatics 2000;16:760-766.

242. Benner SA, Cohen, M. A. and Gonnet, G. H. Empirical and structural models for insertions and deletions in the divergent evolution of proteins, J Mol Biol 1993;229:1065-1082.

243. Thompson JD. Introducing variable gap penalties to sequence alignment in linear space., Comput Appl Biosci. 1995;11:181-186.

244. Doolittle RF. Of URFs and ORFs: a primer on how to analyze derived amino acid sequences., University Science Books, Mill Valley California. 1986.

245. Altschul SF, Gish, W. Local alignment statistics, Methods Enzymol 1996;266:460-480.

246. Pearson WR. Empirical statistical estimates for sequence similarity searches, J Mol Biol 1998;276:71-84.

247. Notredame C, Holm, L. and Higgins, D.G. COFFEE: an objective function for multiple sequence alignments, Bioinformatics 1998;14:407-422.

248. Hertz GZ, Stormo, G.D. Identifying DNA and protein patterns with statistically significant alignments of multiple sequences, Bioinformatics 1999;15:563-577.

249. Thompson JD, Plewniak, F., Ripp, R., Thierry, J.C. and Poch, O. Towards a reliable objective function for multiple sequence alignments, J Mol Biol 2001;314:937-951.

250. Livingstone CD, Barton, G.J. Protein sequence alignments: a strategy for the hierarchical analysis of residue conservation, Comput Appl Biosci 1993;9:745-756.

251. Pei J, Grishin, N.V. AL2CO: calculation of positional conservation in a protein sequence alignment, Bioinformatics 2001;17:700-712.

252. Rodi DJ, Mandava, S. and Makowski, L. DIVAA: analysis of amino acid diversity in multiple aligned protein sequences, Bioinformatics 2004;20:3481-3489.

253. Smagala JA, Dawson, E D., Mehlmann, M., Townsend, M.B., Kuchta, R.D. and Rowlen, K.L. ConFind: a robust tool for conserved sequence identification, Bioinformatics 2005;21:4420-4422.

254. Lassmann T, Sonnhammer, E.L. Automatic assessment of alignment quality, Nucleic Acids Res 2005;33:7120-7128.

255. Sim SE, Easterbrook, S. and Holt, R.C. Using benchmarking to advance research: a challenge to software engineering, 25th International Conference on Software Engineering 2003 74-83.

256. McClure MA, Vasi, T.K. and Fitch, W.M. Comparative analysis of multiple proteinsequence alignment methods, Mol Biol Evol 1994;11:571-592.

257. Bahr A, Thompson, J. D., Thierry, J.C. and Poch, O. BAliBASE (Benchmark Alignment dataBASE): enhancements for repeats, transmembrane sequences and circular permutations, Nucleic Acids Res 2001;29:323-326.

258. Raghava GP, Searle, S.M., Audley, P.C., Barber, J.D. and Barton, G.J. OXBench: a benchmark for evaluation of protein multiple sequence alignment accuracy, BMC Bioinformatics 2003;4:47.

259. Van Walle I, Lasters, I. and Wyns, L. SABmark--a benchmark for sequence alignment that covers the entire known fold space, Bioinformatics 2005;21:1267-1268.

260. Van Walle I, Lasters, I. and Wyns, L. Align-m--a new algorithm for multiple alignment of highly divergent sequences, Bioinformatics 2004;20:1428-1435.

261. Mizuguchi K, Deane, C. M., Blundell, T. L. and Overington, J. P. HOMSTRAD: a database of protein structure alignments for homologous families, Protein Sci 1998;7:2469-2471.

262. Blackshields G, Wallace, I.M., Larkin, M. and Higgins, D.G. Analysis and comparison of benchmarks for multiple sequence alignment, In Silico Biol 2006;6:321-339.

263. Thompson JD, Plewniak, F. and Poch, O. A comprehensive comparison of multiple sequence alignment programs, Nucleic Acids Res. 1999 27:2682-2690.

264. Butler BA. Sequence analysis using GCG, Methods Biochem Anal 1998;39:74-97.

265. Etzold T, Ulyanov, A. and Argos, P. SRS: information retrieval system for molecular biology data banks, Meth Enzymol 1996;266:114–128.

266. Wu CH, Apweiler, R., Bairoch, A., Natale, D.A., Barker, W.C., Boeckmann, B., Ferro, S., Gasteiger, E., Huang, H., Lopez, R., Magrane, M., Martin, M.J., Mazumder, R., O'Donovan, C., Redaschi, N. and Suzek, B. The Universal Protein Resource (UniProt): an expanding universe of protein information, Nucleic Acids Res 2006;34:D187-191.

267. Kouranov A, Xie, L., de la Cruz, J., Chen, L., Westbrook, J., Bourne, P.E. and Berman, H.M. The RCSB PDB information portal for structural genomics, Nucleic Acids Res 2006;34:D302-305.

268. Bateman A, Coin, L., Durbin, R., Finn, R.D., Hollich, V., Griffiths-Jones, S., Khanna, A., Marshall, M., Moxon, S., Sonnhammer, E.L., Studholme, D.J., Yeats, C. and Eddy, S.R. The Pfam protein families database, Nucleic Acids Res 2004;32:D138-141.

269. Bru C, Courcelle, E., Carrere, S., Beausse, Y., Dalmar, S. and Kahn, D. The ProDom database of protein domain families: more emphasis on 3D, Nucleic Acids Res 2005;33:D212-215.

270. Letunic I, Copley, R.R., Pils, B., Pinkert, S., Schultz, J. and Bork, P. SMART 5: domains in the context of genomes and networks, Nucleic Acids Res 2006;34:D257-260.

271. Subramanian AR, Kaufmann, M. and Morgenstern, B. DIALIGN-TX: greedy and progressive approaches for segment-based multiple sequence alignment, Algorithms Mol Biol 2008;3:6.

272. Wallace IM, O'Sullivan, O. and Higgins, D.G. Evaluation of iterative alignment algorithms for multiple alignment, Bioinformatics 2005;21:1408-1414.

273. Kimura M. The Neutral Theory of Molecular Evolution Cambridge: Cambridge University Press 1983.

274. Wu SaM, U. . Fast text searching allowing errors, Commun. ACM 1992;35:83-91.

275. Thompson JD, Muller, A., Waterhouse, A., Procter, J., Barton, G. J., Plewniak, F. and Poch, O. MACSIMS: multiple alignment of complete sequences information management system, BMC Bioinformatics 2006;7:318.

276. Holland RC, Down, T.A., Pocock, M., Prlić, A., Huen, D., James, K., Foisy, S., Dräger, A., Yates, A., Heuer, M. and Schreiber, M.J. BioJava: an open-source framework for bioinformatics, Bioinformatics 2008;24:2096-2097.

277. Quinlan JR. Induction of decision trees., Mach. Learn. 1986; 1:81-106.

278. Fan W, Wang, H., Yu, P.S. and Ma, S. . Is random model better? On its accuracy and efficiency, Proceedings of the Third IEEE International Conference on Data Mining 2003:51-58.

279. Breiman L. Random forests, Mach. Learning 2001;45:5-32.

280. Ferrucci D, Lally, A. UIMA: an architectural approach to unstructured information processing in the corporate research environment, Nat. Lang. Eng. 2004;10:327-348.

281. Kano Y, Baumgartner, W.A., Jr., McCrohon, L., Ananiadou, S., Cohen, K.B., Hunter, L. and Tsujii, J. U-Compare: share and compare text mining tools with UIMA, Bioinformatics 2009;25:1997-1998.

282. Plewniak F, Thompson, J.D. and Poch, O. Ballast: blast post-processing based on locally conserved segments, Bioinformatics 2000;16:750-759.

283. Thompson JD, Prigent, V. and Poch, O. LEON: multiple aLignment Evaluation Of Neighbours, Nucleic Acids Res 2004;32:1298-1307.

284. Sammeth M, Heringa, J. Global multiple-sequence alignment with repeats, Proteins 2006;64:263-274.

285. Krogh A, Larsson, B., von Heijne, G. and Sonnhammer, E. L. Predicting transmembrane protein topology with a hidden Markov model: application to complete genomes, J Mol Biol 2001;305:567-580.

286. Kall L, Krogh, A. and Sonnhammer, E. L. A combined transmembrane topology and signal peptide prediction method, J Mol Biol 2004;338:1027-1036.

287. Henikoff S, Henikoff, J. Amino acid substitution matrices from protein blocks, Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. 1992;**89**,:10915-10919.

288. Di Tommaso P, Orobitg, M., Guirado, F., Cores, F., Espinosa, T. and Notredame, C. Cloud-Coffee: Implementation of a parallel consistency-based multiple alignment algorithm in the T-Coffee package and its benchmarking on the Amazon Elastic-Cloud, Bioinformatics 2010.

289. Wagener J, Spjuth O, Willighagen EL et al. XMPP for cloud computing in bioinformatics supporting discovery and invocation of asynchronous web services, BMC Bioinformatics 2009;10:279.

## Appendix